

The Philippine Islands, 1493-1898 — Volume 22 of 55 eBook

The Philippine Islands, 1493-1898 — Volume 22 of 55

The following sections of this BookRags Literature Study Guide is offprint from Gale's For Students Series: Presenting Analysis, Context, and Criticism on Commonly Studied Works: Introduction, Author Biography, Plot Summary, Characters, Themes, Style, Historical Context, Critical Overview, Criticism and Critical Essays, Media Adaptations, Topics for Further Study, Compare & Contrast, What Do I Read Next?, For Further Study, and Sources.

(c)1998-2002; (c)2002 by Gale. Gale is an imprint of The Gale Group, Inc., a division of Thomson Learning, Inc. Gale and Design and Thomson Learning are trademarks used herein under license.

The following sections, if they exist, are offprint from Beacham's Encyclopedia of Popular Fiction: "Social Concerns", "Thematic Overview", "Techniques", "Literary Precedents", "Key Questions", "Related Titles", "Adaptations", "Related Web Sites". (c)1994-2005, by Walton Beacham.

The following sections, if they exist, are offprint from Beacham's Guide to Literature for Young Adults: "About the Author", "Overview", "Setting", "Literary Qualities", "Social Sensitivity", "Topics for Discussion", "Ideas for Reports and Papers". (c)1994-2005, by Walton Beacham.

All other sections in this Literature Study Guide are owned and copyrighted by BookRags, Inc.

Contents

| | |
|--|--------------------|
| The Philippine Islands, 1493-1898 — Volume 22 of 55 eBook..... | 1 |
| Contents..... | 2 |
| Table of Contents..... | 9 |
| Page 1..... | 11 |
| Page 2..... | 12 |
| Page 3..... | 13 |
| Page 4..... | 14 |
| Page 5..... | 15 |
| Page 6..... | 16 |
| Page 7..... | 17 |
| Page 8..... | 18 |
| Page 9..... | 20 |
| Page 10..... | 22 |
| Page 11..... | 23 |
| Page 12..... | 24 |
| Page 13..... | 25 |
| Page 14..... | 26 |
| Page 15..... | 27 |
| Page 16..... | 28 |
| Page 17..... | 29 |
| Page 18..... | 30 |
| Page 19..... | 31 |
| Page 20..... | 32 |
| Page 21..... | 34 |
| Page 22..... | 35 |



[Page 23..... 36](#)

[Page 24..... 37](#)

[Page 25..... 38](#)

[Page 26..... 39](#)

[Page 27..... 40](#)

[Page 28..... 41](#)

[Page 29..... 42](#)

[Page 30..... 43](#)

[Page 31..... 44](#)

[Page 32..... 45](#)

[Page 33..... 46](#)

[Page 34..... 48](#)

[Page 35..... 49](#)

[Page 36..... 51](#)

[Page 37..... 52](#)

[Page 38..... 54](#)

[Page 39..... 56](#)

[Page 40..... 57](#)

[Page 41..... 58](#)

[Page 42..... 60](#)

[Page 43..... 61](#)

[Page 44..... 62](#)

[Page 45..... 63](#)

[Page 46..... 64](#)

[Page 47..... 65](#)

[Page 48..... 66](#)



[Page 49..... 68](#)

[Page 50..... 69](#)

[Page 51..... 71](#)

[Page 52..... 72](#)

[Page 53..... 73](#)

[Page 54..... 74](#)

[Page 55..... 75](#)

[Page 56..... 77](#)

[Page 57..... 78](#)

[Page 58..... 79](#)

[Page 59..... 81](#)

[Page 60..... 82](#)

[Page 61..... 83](#)

[Page 62..... 84](#)

[Page 63..... 85](#)

[Page 64..... 86](#)

[Page 65..... 87](#)

[Page 66..... 89](#)

[Page 67..... 90](#)

[Page 68..... 92](#)

[Page 69..... 93](#)

[Page 70..... 95](#)

[Page 71..... 97](#)

[Page 72..... 99](#)

[Page 73..... 101](#)

[Page 74..... 102](#)



[Page 75..... 103](#)

[Page 76..... 104](#)

[Page 77..... 105](#)

[Page 78..... 106](#)

[Page 79..... 107](#)

[Page 80..... 108](#)

[Page 81..... 109](#)

[Page 82..... 110](#)

[Page 83..... 111](#)

[Page 84..... 112](#)

[Page 85..... 113](#)

[Page 86..... 114](#)

[Page 87..... 115](#)

[Page 88..... 116](#)

[Page 89..... 117](#)

[Page 90..... 118](#)

[Page 91..... 119](#)

[Page 92..... 120](#)

[Page 93..... 121](#)

[Page 94..... 122](#)

[Page 95..... 123](#)

[Page 96..... 124](#)

[Page 97..... 125](#)

[Page 98..... 127](#)

[Page 99..... 129](#)

[Page 100..... 130](#)



[Page 101..... 131](#)

[Page 102..... 132](#)

[Page 103..... 133](#)

[Page 104..... 134](#)

[Page 105..... 136](#)

[Page 106..... 138](#)

[Page 107..... 139](#)

[Page 108..... 140](#)

[Page 109..... 142](#)

[Page 110..... 143](#)

[Page 111..... 144](#)

[Page 112..... 145](#)

[Page 113..... 146](#)

[Page 114..... 147](#)

[Page 115..... 149](#)

[Page 116..... 150](#)

[Page 117..... 151](#)

[Page 118..... 152](#)

[Page 119..... 153](#)

[Page 120..... 154](#)

[Page 121..... 156](#)

[Page 122..... 157](#)

[Page 123..... 158](#)

[Page 124..... 159](#)

[Page 125..... 160](#)

[Page 126..... 161](#)



[Page 127..... 162](#)

[Page 128..... 163](#)

[Page 129..... 164](#)

[Page 130..... 165](#)

[Page 131..... 166](#)

[Page 132..... 167](#)

[Page 133..... 168](#)

[Page 134..... 169](#)

[Page 135..... 170](#)

[Page 136..... 171](#)

[Page 137..... 172](#)

[Page 138..... 173](#)

[Page 139..... 174](#)

[Page 140..... 175](#)

[Page 141..... 177](#)

[Page 142..... 178](#)

[Page 143..... 179](#)

[Page 144..... 180](#)

[Page 145..... 182](#)

[Page 146..... 183](#)

[Page 147..... 184](#)

[Page 148..... 185](#)

[Page 149..... 186](#)

[Page 150..... 187](#)

[Page 151..... 188](#)

[Page 152..... 189](#)



[Page 153..... 190](#)

[Page 154..... 192](#)

[Page 155..... 194](#)

[Page 156..... 196](#)

[Page 157..... 198](#)

[Page 158..... 199](#)

[Page 159..... 200](#)

[Page 160..... 201](#)

[Page 161..... 203](#)

[Page 162..... 204](#)

[Page 163..... 205](#)

[Page 164..... 206](#)

[Page 165..... 207](#)

[Page 166..... 209](#)



Table of Contents

| Section | Table of Contents | Page |
|--|-------------------|------|
| Start of eBook | | 1 |
| ILLUSTRATIONS | | 1 |
| PREFACE | | 1 |
| The Editors | | 9 |
| DOCUMENTS OF 1625 | | 9 |
| ROYAL DECREE GRANTING INCOME TO THE SOCIETY OF JESUS | | 17 |
| LETTER FROM THE ARCHBISHOP TO FELIPE IV | | 18 |
| ROYAL FESTIVITIES AT MANILA | | 20 |
| LETTER FROM FERNANDO DE SILVA TO FELIPE IV | | 26 |
| DOCUMENTS OF 1626 | | 35 |
| LETTER FROM ARCHBISHOP SERRANO TO FELIPE IV | | 36 |
| LETTER FROM FERNANDO DE SILVA TO FELIPE IV | | 41 |
| LETTER FROM THE SISTERS OF ST. CLARE TO FELIPE IV | | 46 |
| PETITION FOR AID TO THE SEMINARY OF SAN JUAN DE LETRAN | | 48 |
| ROYAL DECREES | | 50 |
| MILITARY AFFAIRS OF THE ISLANDS | | 52 |
| DOCUMENTS OF 1627 | | 55 |
| THE IMPORTANCE OF THE PHILIPPINES | | 55 |
| RELATION OF 1626 | | 58 |
| LETTER FROM FELIPE IV TO TAVORA | | 65 |
| LAWS REGARDING THE SANGLEYS | | 67 |
| Law III | | 67 |
| Law IX | | 67 |
| Law X | | 68 |
| Law XIII | | 68 |
| Law VI | | 69 |



| | |
|---|-----|
| Law XI | 69 |
| Law VIII | 69 |
| Law IV | 69 |
| Law I | 70 |
| Law II | 70 |
| Law VII | 70 |
| Law XII | 70 |
| DECREES REGARDING THE RELIGIOUS | 71 |
| DECREES REGARDING THE CHINESE | 73 |
| INADVISABILITY OF A SPANISH POST ON THE ISLAND OF FORMOSA | 75 |
| DOCUMENTS OF 1628-1629 | 80 |
| RELATION OF 1627-28 | 80 |
| REPORT OF APPOINTMENTS MADE BY GOVERNOR TAVORA | 99 |
| LETTERS TO FELIPE IV FROM GOVERNOR TAVORA | 114 |
| | 133 |
| DECREES REGARDING THE CHINESE | 137 |
| RELATIONS OF 1628-29 | 140 |
| I | 140 |
| II | 144 |
| BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DATA | 153 |
| NOTES | 155 |



Page 1

ILLUSTRATIONS

Autograph signature of Fernando de Silva; photographic facsimile from original Ms. in Archivo general de Indias, Sevilla. Plan of the city and port of Macao; photographic facsimile of engraving in Bellin's *Petit atlas maritime* ([Paris], 1764) no. 57; from copy in the library of Wisconsin-Historical Society.

PREFACE

The present volume covers (1625-29) the governorship of Fernando de Silva, and half of that of Juan Nino de Tavora. Besides the staple topics of trade restrictions, conflicts between the civil and ecclesiastical authorities, and hostilities with the Dutch, it contains more than usual matter which sheds light on social conditions in Manila and the internal affairs of the colony. A vivid and picturesque description of social life in Manila is furnished in the document on "Royal festivities;" and educational interests are represented in others, regarding aid to the Jesuit college there, and a school for orphan boys. An order of nuns has for some time been established in Manila, and they ask for more liberty to receive novices—a proceeding apparently objected to in that community: they receive liberal aid from many persons, especially wealthy women. A solid bridge of stone has been built across the Pasig River, facilitating intercourse and traffic among the people. The Parian has been destroyed by fire, but is rebuilt in better and more extensive form than ever before. Special efforts are made to protect the Chinese resident there, who are often wronged and ill-treated by the Spaniards. In this volume is much concerning the persecution of Christians in Japan, the proceedings of the Dutch in the Eastern seas, affairs in China, and the raids of Moro pirates upon the Pintados Islands. The limits of Spanish domination are somewhat extended by the establishment of a military post on Formosa Island; but many feel that this is an expensive and burdensome enterprise.

The Spanish royal Council of State send to the king (March 7, 1625) a report on the appointment of a governor for the Philippines, in place of Fajardo, who had in 1623 asked permission to return to Spain. Many candidates for this office are enumerated, with the merits and services of each, and the number of votes given to each in the session of the Council; the whole is submitted to the king that he may choose from them. On June 1 of the same year Felipe grants to the Jesuit college at Manila an annual income for sixteen years.



Page 2

A letter from Archbishop Serrano to the king (July 25, 1625) reports the arrival of the new governor, Fernando de Silva, and the auspicious beginning of his rule. The persecution of the Christians in Japan is increasing in severity, and Serrano therefore tries to prevent any further passage of missionaries to that country; but the zeal of the friars outruns their discretion, and some have gone to Japan. Serrano asks the king to interpose his authority, and restrain the friars. The bishop of Nueva Segovia is dead, and Serrano has placed an ecclesiastic in charge of that diocese. The officials of the Philippine government should be officially inspected, for which duty he recommends one of his own subordinates, Juan Cevicos. He asks the king to aid the Jesuit college at Manila.

The accession of Felipe *iv* is celebrated at Manila (January, 1623) with “royal festivities”—bull-fights, games, decoration of the streets, *etc.*, which are described in picturesque and enthusiastic terms by a citizen of Manila. Fernando de Silva, appointed successor to Fajardo, notifies the king (August 4, 1625) of his arrival in the islands, and reports the condition of affairs there, and various events of interest. He complains that the Audiencia arrogates undue authority to itself, and he has already annulled their action in assigning encomiendas. Geronimo de Silva has been deposed by them from the military command, and some of them have made illegal appointments to army and navy offices; the governor has annulled these also. Hostile Dutch ships are menacing the rich trading vessels that ply to Nueva Espana; Silva has taken measures of defense and precaution against them. A powerful Dutch fleet has already reached Ternate; he hopes to obtain some ships, provided by the missionaries, to defend the islands against the foe. The royal treasury and magazines are, however, empty; and he has had to send a cargo to Japan to buy supplies. But the persecutions of Christians in that country lead to great restrictions on the commerce of Spaniards there; and the embassy sent from Manila was not even received by the Japanese. The rebellion in Cagayan will be punished as severely as possible; and Silva will endeavor to improve the condition of affairs in the Moluccas. He recommends that the captive Ternatan king be restored to his own country. The attempt to work the Igorrote gold mines has been abandoned. Silva has sold certain municipal offices, but recommends that hereafter these be conferred on deserving citizens. The export duty on goods sent to Nueva Espana should be lowered. The governor complains of the lawless conduct of the religious, who pay no heed to the civil authorities and do as they please with the Indians; and he asks for more authority to restrain them. More troops are needed in the islands; and Silva desires to check the Dutch who are getting a foothold in the island of Formosa. Complaint is made that the treasury officials of Mexico exceed their rights in auditing the accounts sent them from Manila. Silva closes by recommending to the royal favor certain of the Spanish citizens of Manila, and asking for his wife permission to absent herself from the islands in case of his death.

Page 3

The archbishop of Manila writes to the king (July 25, 1626) about various ecclesiastical matters. He enumerates the salaries of the archbishop and his prebendaries, and asks that these be increased. The cathedral's income is very inadequate, and needs aid. Serrano enumerates the number of secular benefices in his diocese, and the number of convents and priests belonging to the respective orders, with the number of souls under their spiritual charge. The same enumeration is made for the suffragan dioceses under his care. The archbishop then commends the government (*ad interim*) and procedure of Fernando de Silva, recounting various acts of the latter which are beneficial to the colony. The new proprietary governor, Juan Nino de Tavora, has arrived at Manila. The Dutch have not made their usual raids on the islands, and trade with China, India, and other nations has consequently been more flourishing, during the past year. Moro pirates have, however, inflicted considerable damage; and one of their fleets even assaulted Serrano and his company while on an official visitation—the latter barely saving their lives by flight. Serrano commends the auditor Messa y Lugo, and asks for promotion for him. Dominican religious have established a mission on the island of Hermosa, where a Spanish post was recently formed.

Fernando de Silva makes a final report to the king (July 31, 1626) of his government, up to the arrival of his successor, Juan Nino de Tavora. Affairs in both the Moluccas and the Philippines are in a quiet and safe condition; the royal magazines are well supplied, and the forts equipped with artillery. Silva has lessened the burdens imposed on the natives, and quieted the revolt in Cagayan; and he has punished the savage tribes who harassed the peaceful Indians. Barracks for the troops, and a stone bridge over the Pasig, are improvements made at Manila. The Spaniards are excluded from trade in Japan; and the Dutch have built a fort on the island of Formosa. Silva sends an expedition to that island, and establishes a Spanish post at its northern end. He explains the advantage of this in restoring to Manila the Chinese trade, which has been injured by both the Dutch and the Portuguese; it will also be a point of vantage for the Japanese trade. Silva concludes by expressing his personal opinion of the characters of the respective auditors, and renewing his request that his wife may enjoy possession of her encomiendas in the islands, without residence there.

In 1620 the order of Poor Clares had been established in the Philippines; and, six years later, they write a letter to the king (July 31, 1626) asking that they be not restricted in the number of women whom they may receive into their order. A seminary for orphan Spanish boys was opened, at nearly the same time, at Manila; its founder asks the king, in letters of 1626, to assist his enterprise with money and other aid; in accordance with this request, the government assigns an income to the school. A royal decree of June 19 in that year orders that the religious (especially the Augustinians) in the islands shall cease to commit lawless acts in contravention of the civil authorities. Another of the same date commands that municipal court sessions be not hindered by treasury auction sales. A third (dated October 16) orders Tavora to see that the hospitals in Manila be suitably aided and conducted.

Page 4

The military affairs of the islands are related in an unsigned pamphlet (Sevilla, 1626). The Moros of Mindanao discontinue their plundering expeditions for a time, and ask aid from the Spaniards against other Moros who are their enemies; this is promised, but hostile encounters soon arise between them and the Spaniards, which are related in detail. The Dutch besiege the Portuguese settlement in Macao, but are repulsed with great loss. Captain Fernando de Silva conducts a Spanish expedition from Manila to relieve Macao. News has come that he is in Siam, and in danger of attack from enemies there. In Japan the persecution of Christians increases, and all trade with the Philippines is strictly prohibited.

In an undated document (1627?), Martin Castano, procurator of the Philippine colony at the Spanish court, urges upon the king the importance of keeping his possessions in the Far East, and not allowing his enemies the Dutch to profit by the wealth therein. Castano urges the duty of extending the Christian religion among the heathen, for which the Philippines offer the best opportunity in the world. This object is being frustrated in Japan by the influence of the Dutch heretics, who also are monopolizing the trade of that country, and injuring that of the Chinese with the Spaniards. If the Dutch gain Filipinas, they will soon conquer Portuguese India, and even harass the Spanish colonies in America. Castano calls attention to the natural wealth of the islands in gold and cloves, and to their valuable trade with Japan and China—all which sources of profit should be kept for the Spanish crown.

A. "relation of 1626" (actually covering part of 1627)—unsigned, but evidently by a Jesuit of Manila—recounts the leading events of those years in the countries of the Far East. In the Moluccas there has been peace; but it is expected that, as soon as the wars in Flanders cease, the Dutch ships will again infest the eastern seas. The pirates of the Camucones have harried some of the islands, plundering and killing; punitive expeditions are sent against them, but accomplish little. Better success, however, has attended an enterprise of this sort against the Mindanaos. A relief expedition is sent to Macao, under Captain Fernando de Silva. On his return, he is forced by a storm to land in Siam; and there is slain, with most of his men, in a fight with the Siamese and Japanese. Governor Fernando de Silva sends two Jesuits as ambassadors to Siam, to recover the property of Spaniards that was in Captain Silva's ship; but most of it has been plundered by the Siamese soldiers. One of the Jesuits remains there, and begins a mission. The settlement in Formosa has been successful, and the natives are now on friendly terms with the Spaniards. Tavora sends supplies for the troops there, which finally reach them after long delays from stormy weather. Trade from Manila to Japan is even more strictly prohibited than before.

Page 5

Felipe *iv* writes to Governor Tavora (September 3, 1627), in answer to his letters of the previous year. The king approves of his establishing a fort at the northern end of Celebes, promises to send him aid and arms, and gives him directions for procedure in various matters of detail.

From *Recopilacion de leyes de las Indias* are translated a group of laws (1594-1627) relating to the Chinese in the Philippines. It is decreed that they shall be charged no fee for leaving Manila; the sale of their goods is regulated; no oppression or injury to them shall be permitted; they shall not be allowed to live in the houses of Spaniards; their suits shall come first before the governor of the Parian, with appeal to the Audiencia, and that neither auditors nor municipal officials shall begin such suits; the Audiencia shall not meddle with the affairs of the Parian, which shall be in charge of the governor of the islands; and assessments of fowls shall not be made upon the Chinese. The governor is ordered to promote agriculture among them, and not to exact personal services; their number must be limited to six thousand, and no bribes or fees for licenses may be exacted; they must be kept in due subjection, but always through mild and just methods; provision is made regarding the fees for their licenses; Chinese converts are exempted for ten years from paying tributes; and a limit is placed to the assessment made upon them for the royal service.

The king orders the Audiencia of Manila (May 21, 1627) to punish certain Augustinians who have attacked a government official. On June 11 following, he grants certain additional supplies to the Augustinian convent at Manila. Later (November 4) the Council of the Indias recommend that a grant be made to the Recollects in the islands, of a certain amount for medicines. In a decree of September 10, the king orders that a protector for the Chinese be appointed, who shall not be the royal fiscal; and that any balance in the fund that they maintain for the royal service shall be left to their disposal, or credited on the next year's assessment. Another decree, dated November 19, recites the oppression of the Chinese in the Parian in compelling their hair to be cut at baptism, and levying from them an extortionate tribute; and orders that both these vexations be abolished.

Juan Cevicos, a resident of Manila who is at the Spanish court, writes a memorial (December 20, 1627) on "the inadvisability of a Spanish post in the island of Hermosa." He thinks that the Dutch have established themselves there not so much to pillage the Chinese merchant ships, as to establish a factory on Formosa, from which they can gain the Chinese and Japanese trade. Their success in this would result in the destruction of Macao and ruin the Japan trade for the Philippines; therefore they should be driven out of Formosa, and before they have time to lure the Chinese trade also from the Spaniards. But,

Page 6

even then, it is an expensive and undesirable enterprise for the Spaniards to maintain a fort there, as the island of Formosa is of little importance for its products, and there would be no advantage in making it a way-station for the Chinese trade. To attempt this would but shift thither the scene of hostilities with the Dutch, and impose new burdens on the already overtaxed people of the Philippines. It is useless to keep the island as a port of refuge for the Spanish ships; there is danger that the Chinese will attack it; and even for the conversion of the heathen the king is not under obligations to do more than is required by his subjects in the Philippines.

The Jesuit chronicle of events for 1627-28 has much of interest. In July and August, 1627, Tavora equips an expedition to expel the Dutch from Formosa; but it sails too late, and is compelled by storms to return to Cavite, some of the vessels being lost. One of the ships reaches the Spanish fort in Formosa, only to find that one of its officers and some of his men have been slain by treacherous natives. The ship supplies the garrison with the food of which they are in need, and returns to Luzon. Soon afterward a richly-laden Portuguese fleet sails from Manila to Macao, and two Spanish galleons are sent with it as escort, to defend it from the Dutch. The galleons, on the return from Macao, pursue a semi-piratical career for several months, capturing several Siamese vessels with valuable cargoes, by way of reprisal for the injuries inflicted on Spaniards in Siam; and taking other prizes, not all of which are regarded as lawful.

The Christian religion is flourishing in China. The coasts of that country are infested by pirates, who even capture and destroy towns. The noted stone of Singanfu has been discovered, making known the early establishment of Christianity in China. The Manchu foe Noorhachu is dead. In Formosa the Chinese are making inquiries as to the Spanish occupation; and the commandant Carreno rescues the mandarin envoy from hostile natives. The relief expedition to Ternate is attacked by a Dutch ship, the Spaniards losing two vessels. The Camucones pirates are repulsed this year. Some strange people, probably from distant islands, are blown ashore on Cebu. A shipyard is established in Camarines; it is attacked and plundered by Joloan pirates. Accordingly a Spanish expedition is sent against them from Oton and Cebu; and the Joloans are heavily punished, their finest town being destroyed and their ships and supplies of rice burned. The revolted province of Cagayan (Luzon), is also entered and laid waste. Several destructive fires occur, among the losses being that of the Parian at Manila—which is, however, rebuilt within four months.

Another relation for the same period contains some additional information. An earthquake occurs in northern Luzon. Two Spanish galleys enter and reconnoiter the Dutch port on Formosa; then a storm drives them back to Luzon, and finally destroys them. The old king of Ternate, who has been captive at Manila for many years, at last dies there.

Page 7

In conformity to the royal commands, Tavora sends to the king (August 2, 1628) a report on the appointments made by him, with their salaries, revenues, *etc.*; he also recounts the merits or services of each, for which such appointment was made. This list includes grants of *encomiendas*, and appointments to offices of justice and war.

Two days later, the governor sends a full annual report of administration in the islands—judicial, financial, and governmental. Under the first, he refers to the king certain legal difficulties that have arisen in the courts of the islands. These relate to the possession of two *encomiendas* by married persons, the decision of Indian lawsuits, the jurisdiction of the Audiencia in affairs concerning the Chinese, and the privileges of the governor's office. Tavora takes especial pains to describe the character of the Chinese, and the power that they have secured over the Spaniards among whom they live, through their control of all trades and of commerce. He advises that they be tried and punished by the methods in vogue in their own country, and not allowed to appeal to the Audiencia.

In the letter relating to affairs of the treasury, Tavora makes some explanations regarding his relations with the royal officials at Manila. He finds it necessary to supervise their drafts on the royal treasury, since its funds are so low; and he has taken charge of the business of issuing licenses to the Chinese who remain in the islands. Tavora is endeavoring to reduce expenses and secure economy in the necessary expenditures of government. He asks that notarial offices be not sold, but filled by appointment, and changed annually. In regard to the question whether the Indians should pay their tributes in kind or in money, he urges that the former be required, as otherwise the natives will not, through laziness, produce food supplies. The treasury of the islands is heavily indebted, on account of unusual expenses arising, with scanty receipts from the revenues. The soldiers suffer great hardships, and some are deserting. The viceroy of Nueva Espana must aid the Philippines more liberally; and the governor of the islands must know on what aid he can depend, Tavora asks to be relieved from his present office unless the means necessary for carrying on the government can be supplied.

A third letter relates to general affairs of government, in which he reports that peace and harmony exist among the various departments. The bridge across the river Pasig is being constructed. The Parian at Manila was destroyed by fire in January, but has been rebuilt in better style; and other destructive fires are mentioned. The rice crop has been abundant, and agriculture is improving. In conjunction with the other royal officials, Tavora has allowed the citizens to send goods this year to Mexico without the usual restrictions, on account of the impoverished condition of the islands. He finds the Indians

Page 8

much harassed by the exactions made upon them for the public service, and, with the consent of all interested—the royal officials, the encomenderos, and the ecclesiastics—prepares new instructions and ordinances, which are designed to relieve the natives from all oppression, and provide fair wages for their labor on public works. The royal officials are endeavoring to secure more satisfactory methods of government for the Chinese who are in the islands, both residents and transients. Tavora asks for a printed copy of all the royal decrees that apply to his government. He has done all in his power to aid the seminary for orphan boys at Manila, but it needs more; and he asks the king to grant an encomienda in support of this charity. He is doing what he can for the hospitals, but asks that brethren from a hospital order be sent to manage them. The ships from Mexico were sent late this year, and were almost lost through storms; Tavora urges that this be not allowed to occur, as the very existence of the Philippine colony is thus imperiled.

A document dated October 7, 1628, presents (apparently to the Council of the Indias) various arguments for suppressing the silk trade of China in Spain and its colonies. The old complaint is reiterated, that the silver coin of Nueva Espana is being drained away into China; besides, this trade deprives Spain of all this money, and the customs duties are greatly decreased from what they might amount to. Large quantities of contraband goods are, moreover, carried to the South American colonies, thus injuring the exports from the mother country. The Chinese wares are apparently cheap, but their poor quality, and their depreciating effect on the values of Spanish goods, diminish the real profits of the Chinese trade. The necessity of protecting the silk industry in the kingdom of Granada is used as a strong argument against allowing the Chinese silk trade in the Spanish colonies, as the former adds greatly to the revenues of the crown. If Chinese silks were prohibited, those of Granada (the sale of which is much diminished) would be in much greater demand; and the producers there could meet their obligations, while the royal revenues would increase accordingly.

Some decrees are issued by Felipe *iv* for the protection of the Chinese. One (dated June 8, 1628) orders the governor of the Philippines to protect them from extortion and oppression in the matter of tributes and that of permissions granted them to travel in the islands; another (August 17) refers to him the demand that all Chinese except the married Christians be strictly confined within the Parian. On March 7, 1629, the king orders him to ascertain whether the Chinese need a protector; and, if so, to send him a list of persons from whom such official may be chosen by the Council of the Indias.

The Jesuit annals are continued for 1628-29; there are two relations for this year, one of which consists of letters from various fathers of the Society, merely strung together. Hernando Estrada relates the success of a Spanish fleet from Oton in punishing the Joloan pirates. Pedro de Prado writes of the raids made by the Camuzones, other pirates, and the dangers encountered by the missionaries; and describes the animals

and products of the country. Another letter (unsigned) states that the Dutch have been driven out of their establishments in Eastern India.

Page 9

A second general relation (but unsigned) for the same year contains mention of various events both ecclesiastical and secular. On the night of November 25 the Jesuit church falls in ruins, for the third time; it is being rebuilt. The monstrance and host kept in the cathedral are stolen by sacrilegious hands, (an occurrence which causes the death of Archbishop Serrano). An image of the Virgin Mary is seen to weep, as if lamenting the ravages made by pirates in the Pintados. In these raids several of the Jesuit missionaries have narrowly escaped death. The Dutch in Java have been attacked by the natives, and are menaced by the Portuguese there and elsewhere. The Spaniards go to Camboja for lumber, and Dominican missionaries go with them to labor among the heathen. Affairs with Siam are not yet restored to a peaceful condition. The missions in Cochinchina and Tonkin are doing well. The Chinese, at war with the Tartars, borrow aid from the Portuguese at Macao. In Japan the Christians are being exterminated by torture and death. There was talk of expelling the Dutch from that country; but news arrives there of the destruction of a Japanese ship off Siam by the Spaniards, and the Japanese begin to talk of uniting with the Dutch to attack the Spaniards in Formosa and even Manila. "The Philipinas Islands are at present in a ruinous condition." A postscript to this relation describes an encounter between a small Spanish ship from India and a large English ship, at Fayal, in which the former saves itself, after inflicting much damage on its opponent.

The Editors

October, 1904.

DOCUMENTS OF 1625

Report of the Spanish Council of State on the appointment of a governor for the Philippines. March 7. Royal decree granting income to the Society of Jesus. Felipe iv; June 1. Letter from the archbishop of Manila to Felipe iv. Miguel Garcia Serrano; July 25. Royal festivities at Manila. Diego de Rueda y Mendosa; August 1. Letter to Felipe iv. Fernando de Silva; August 4.

Sources: The first, third, and fifth of these documents are from MSS. in the Archive general de Indias, Sevilla; the second, from Pastells's edition of Colin's *Labor evangelica*, iii, pp. 754-755; the fourth, from a pamphlet, *Toros y canas* (Barcelona, 1903).

Translations: These are all made by James A. Robertson.

REPORT OF THE SPANISH COUNCIL OF STATE ON APPOINTMENT OF A
GOVERNOR FOR THE PHILIPPINES



Sire:



Page 10

On the occasion of a letter written to your Majesty by Don Alonso Fajardo de Tenza, governor and captain-general of the Filipinas Islands, and president of the royal Audiencia established therein, on the seventeenth of August of the past year 623, petitioning among other things for permission to come to Espana, the Council advised your Majesty of what occurred to them with regard to the appointment to that office. Your Majesty was pleased to order that persons be proposed for it, and that a relation be made, in the report of the Council, of the pretensions of Don Alonso; and that action be immediate, so that he whom your Majesty should appoint might sail in the trading-fleet bound for Nueva Espana—or, if he should be in the Yndias, that he might be advised so that he could sail in March of the coming year for Filipinas. [Your Majesty also ordered] that Don Alonso's pay should run until his departure thence in the first vessel, and one year longer, in order that he might come here. In fulfilment of your Majesty's orders, it appears that the demands of Don Alonso Fajardo are reduced to a better office in reward for his services and those of his father and forbears; and that your Majesty, by providing what you deem best, make good his pay during all the time while he should be detained there without power to embark, and one year longer, to enable him to come to these kingdoms, offering his person to serve in this interim at the order of his successor. Don Juan Fajardo, his brother, wrote to me, the president, in a letter of November 4 of the past year that, since Don Alonso desires leave to go to Espana, it must be after there has been time to conclude the inspection that was ordered to be made of him and the Audiencia, and after your Majesty has assigned him a post in the Council of War with an adequate salary. In accordance with the charges against him, Don Juan petitions that the permission be revoked until he himself shall return from the expedition of Brazil and come to this court. Will your Majesty show him the favor that may be your pleasure.

The Council having examined personally the services and merits that follow for this office (which carries a salary of eight thousand pesos de minas, of four hundred and fifty maravedis apiece), those who are considered most fitting to receive that office—which must be held for eight years, in accordance with the order given regarding it—are proposed to your Majesty. The first two have seven votes.

Don Geronimo Agustin, of the habit of Calatrava, who has served from the year 88. In that of 89, the duke of Terra Nova, while governor of Milan, assigned him a Spanish infantry company of arquebusiers in the regiment of Lombardia. The same year he went to Flandes, where, at different periods, he served for ten years with appointments and infantry companies; and the last three years as captain and sargento-mayor of the regiments of the masters-of-camp, Don Ynigo de Borja, Don Alvaro Huaser, Don Fernando Giron, and



Page 11

Don Alonso de Leyla. He commanded some of the regiments; and for special services that he performed, the king our sovereign (may he rest in peace), your Majesty's father, granted him four hundred reals [1] income in Milan. In the year 60-[?] he was appointed master-of-camp of a regiment of men in the fleet of the Ocean Sea, in which he has served. Embarking with his regiment, he went to the Terceras to relieve three ships of Yndia which had arrived there in a dilapidated condition; and afterward went with the marquis of Santa Cruz to the undertaking of Alarache. Thence he went to the Mediterranean Sea until he sighted Tunez [*i.e.*, Tunis], in whose bay were burned twenty-two pirate ships and one galliot. [2] On his return from the expedition, he took part in the expulsion of the Moriscos [3] from Valencia, Aragon, and Murcia. Finally, he went with his regiment to La Mamora, and was in full command of all the companies in which served the seigniors and cities of Andalucia and three hundred soldiers of the coast of Granada. Through his determination, the men whom he headed were landed; and they gained and occupied those positions, responding with great courage to their defense and to the fortifications. In consideration of that, he was in the former year of 617 considered for the offices of governor and captain-general of the province of Panama and those of Chile, and as president of the royal Audiencia of those provinces. On account of your Majesty's assurance in his person and services, you granted him the office of viceroy of Mallorca, which he holds at present.

Don Gaspar Ruiz de Pereda, of the habit of San Tiago, has served for more than thirty-six years in the Terceras, in the expedition to Ynglaterra, in the States of Flandes, and in the fleet of the Ocean Sea, where considerable pay and appointments were granted him. Afterward he served in Bretana; and the Council of State entrusted to him matters touching the right of the infanta to that state. [4] He was corregidor and war-captain of the four towns of the seacoast. He attended to the preparation and building of ships and the despatch of fleets satisfactorily. At the conclusion of his office, he returned to that coast, and became superintendent of it all from La Raya of Portugal to Francia. The king our sovereign (may he rest in peace) granted him the government of Habana, which he exercised for nine years. In the residencia taken from him he was regarded as free from blame; and, on his arrival at these kingdoms, was appointed corregidor of Malaga. Later, on account of the satisfaction given by his person, your Majesty appointed him inspector-general in the States of Flandes.

The following three have five votes apiece.

Don Juan Nino de Tavora, who, having been gentleman of the bed chamber to the archduke Alberto, and cavalry captain in the States of Flandes, is at present master-of-camp of Spanish infantry there. With his services and capacity there is entire satisfaction. He is the son of Don Gabriel Nino, formerly chief master-of-camp of the king our sovereign who is in glory.

Page 12

General Don Juan de Venavides, of the habit of San Tiago, is the son of the marquis of Jaralquinto. He has been in the service for the past twenty-two years, seven of them with additional pay under the marquis of Santa Cruz in the galleys of the kingdom of Portugal, and thirteen years with the pay of thirty reals [sc. ducados?] per month in the trade-route to the Yndias. He made five voyages, in that of 610 going as captain of one of the infantry companies of the trading-fleet of Tierra Firme. That same year, the flagship of the galleons having been lost at the departure from Buen Aire, he, having escaped naked, stayed to rescue the men of the ship; and having done this, took them in a patache to Cartagena. In the year 613 he went as admiral of the trading-fleet of Nueva Espana. On the return trip some ships of the fleet were lost in a storm. He was carrying in his ship more than one million [pesos] of silver belonging to your Majesty and to private persons. The masts and the rudder were snapped in twain; the ship began to leak at the bow; and yet he repaired it and anchored in the port of San Lucar without having thrown anything overboard. In 615 he again filled the same office of admiral, and, the flagship from Honduras having been wrecked, he saved many of its crew. In 617 he was recommended as commander of the trading-fleet of Nueva Espana, and was granted the office of its admiral. Finally, he was twice proposed as commander of the Filipinas fleet. On January 13, 620, he was appointed commander of the trading-fleet of Nueva Espana, from which post he came with good reputation and fame. Licentiate Pedro de Vergara Gaviria, in a letter that he wrote to your Majesty from Vera Cruz, where he was inspecting the royal officials, declares that he has seen in his person an excellent zeal and a manner of procedure quite different from what is said there of other commanders, and accordingly he is obliged to give account of it; and that the honors and rewards that your Majesty would be pleased to bestow on him will be well employed. In the year 623, he was for the second time granted the office of commander of the said trading-fleet of Nueva Espana (whence he had come the year before); he took the fleet and brought it in safety. While at the port of Vera Cruz, the Mexican Audiencia committed to him, on the occasion of the rebellion of that city, the fort of San Juan de Ulua, and appointed him as its commandant, and as military captain of all that coast. He served in that capacity until he returned to Espana, desiring to obtain the quiet and peace of that kingdom. In the residencias that have been taken of the appointments as commander that he has held, he has been declared a good official, and worthy of greater honors and emoluments. This present year he was proposed for the office of commander of the trading-fleet of Nueva Espana.



Page 13

The master-of-camp, Don Francisco Zapata Ossorio, knight of the habit of Santiago, has served for twenty-two years, sixteen in Flandes, at fifty reals [sc. ducados?] pay. He was later captain of a Spanish infantry company, with which he took part as occasion offered. He, went to Napoles and was there governor and military captain of the province of Calabria. In the residencia taken of that office, he was exonerated. He commanded the galley of the Napoles squadron at the appointment of Cardinal Capata, in the absence of the regularly-appointed commander, with pay of one hundred and fifty reals [sc. ducados?] per month. In the year of 622 the said cardinal appointed him master-of-camp of the seven companies of Spanish infantry that went to the state of Milan, and captain of one of them, namely, the one that belongs to him as master-of-camp. He came with the permission of the duke of Alva, who wrote to your Majesty recommending him and mentions the said Don Francisco. Your Majesty has ordered him to go to visit the duke of Lorena; also that, going to Flandes, he be given there the first regiment that falls vacant, and that in the meanwhile he enjoy the salary of master-of-camp of halberdiers—namely, one hundred and sixteen ducados per month. His father served more than fifty years, and was in the battle of Lepanto, in the States of Flandes, the war with Portugal, the Terceras Islands, and the expedition to Ynglaterra; he served twice in the inspection of many men in the department of Sevylla, and served in the government of Alcantara, and as corregidor of Joro, and lastly in that of Cordoba. His uncle, Don Juan Capata Ossorio, was bishop of Camora; and his other ancestors, paternal and maternal, died in the service.

Don Garcia Giron has four votes. He has served since the expedition to Ynglaterra. He was lieutenant of the cavalry captain, Don Fernando Giron, his brother, in Lengua-doc [*i.e.*, Languedoc], whence he went to Bretana as arquebusier captain. He took part in all the sieges and in all the reenforcements that occurred during his time, many times having in charge convoys. When the said his brother took two thousand infantrymen for the fleet, he served on it. The adelantado-mayor of Castilla gave him command of a galleon, and later the command of twenty companies when coming from Vigo. When some thirty companies went to Ytalia with the count of Fuentes, he took charge of them by order of the duke of Medina-Sidonia. On those occasions and in Flandes, while serving as captain and sargento-mayor, he gave an excellent account of his person and served with satisfaction to his superiors. In the year of 610, his Majesty who is in glory bestowed upon him the government of Cartagena, I mean of Benezuela. At the expiration of the time for which he was appointed, he was granted the government of Cartagena, and now he has been given that of Habana.

The following seven have each one vote.



Page 14

Don Antonio Sarmiento, son of Count Gondomar. After having served on various occasions, your Majesty bestowed upon him a post in the Council of the Treasury, in which he serves with approval.

Don Sancho de Zeyba, of whose capacity and of the services of his forbears and his own, your Majesty has full notice.

General Don Geronimo Gomez de Sandoval, of the habit of Santiago, captain of a company of men-of-arms in the guards of Castilla, who has served for twenty-three years past on various occasions. In 602, the city of Cartagena appointed him to raise one hundred and fifty infantrymen who were embarked in the galleys of Espana. He went on the expedition of Argel with appointment as Spanish infantry captain. In the year of 604, his Majesty who is in heaven granted him twenty-five ducados pay, which was later increased to thirty. His father being appointed governor and captain-general of Ysla Espanola [*i.e.*, Hayti], and president of that Audiencia, Don Geronimo went with him, having been appointed commandant of the fort of Santo Domingo. At the order of the Audiencia, he took command of the ships of the fleet there for its defense for more than four years. As commander of them, he sailed out at various times to clear that entire coast of enemies, engaging them with great valor. Once he captured two lanchas, and on another occasion a ship, while he sank another. His services were held as very considerable at that time. Having come to this coast to request the office of commander of some fleet, he was granted the post of admiral of that of Nueva Espana, which came in 621. On that voyage, he helped the ships that were unmasted and unrigged, both going and coming. By his great diligence he helped to withdraw one that was burning in the port of San Juan de Ulua from among all the fleet, by which act the greater part of the fleet escaped the fire. It was a great peril, for all the silver and merchandise was embarked for the voyage. In respect to that service, the prior and consuls, as those interested in it, petitioned, in a letter to your Majesty, that you be pleased to give him the place of commander of the fleet in the following year. Having consulted in regard to it, your Majesty was pleased to grant him that of admiral for the good account that he had given of the offices which he had had in charge. Your Majesty will have an account of his person. On this voyage he served with especial approval as an excellent and careful mariner, and is fitted for employment in any command of importance of this kind. Accordingly, he was proposed for the place of captain-general of the trading-fleet that is to go to Nueva Espana this year, which your Majesty bestowed upon Don Lope de Hou y Cordova; and now your Majesty has bestowed upon him that of Tierra Firme. He is the son, as above stated, of Don Diego Gomez de Sandoval (whose capacity is very well known), who, having served more than forty years in various offices, died in the past year



Page 15

of 623, as governor and captain-general of Ysla Espanola, where he was for five years. The Audiencia, the archbishop, and the secular cabildo of Santo Domingo wrote in a letter to your Majesty how well he served in governmental affairs, and in those of war, justice, and peace. He left many debtors because he had conducted his government uprightly; and his property was not able to pay them. They consider Don Geronimo, his son and successor, as capable and worthy of what your Majesty pleases to do for him and what charge you may give him.

Don Rodrigo de Vivero, who, having come to these kingdoms from Nueva Espana, where he was born, and having served Queen Dona Ana, your wife, who is in heaven, as a page, returned to that country. There he was appointed from his youth to the most important duties by the viceroys, for they knew his ability and good qualities. That being known to the king our sovereign who is in glory, your Majesty's grandfather, he appointed him governor and captain-general of the provinces of Nueva Vizcaya, where with great valor, continuous toil, and at his own cost, he made war upon the rebel Indians, until he had reduced more than sixty towns, and brought down many men from the mountains, where they were committing great depredations. By those means they were able to discontinue several presidios, and save the great expense that these occasioned to the royal revenues. Having been attacked by a serious illness that was induced by the hardships of the war, he was forced to return to Mexico, where the viceroy, Marquis de Salinas, his uncle, appointed him governor and captain-general of the Filipinas Islands, because of the arrival at that juncture of news of the death of Don Pedro de Acuna. Without stopping to consider the discomfort and lack that he was causing his family, and the short time in which his successor would arrive, he accepted and went to take charge of the said duties. During the period of his government, he made peace with the Mindanaos, and reenforced the kingdom of Maluco, then besieged by the Dutch, besides performing other special services. Don Juan de Silva, his successor, having arrived, and he having embarked to return to his home, a storm overtook him that forced him to put in at the coast of Japon. There the ship foundered and many of those aboard it were drowned. He escaped on a plank, and was captured with the others who were rescued. That emperor afterward treated them well, gave them a ship and passage, and lent money to Don Rodrigo. He asked the latter to make a treaty with the king, our sovereign (may he rest in peace), in his name, in regard to certain matters touching trade and commerce with Nueva Espana. He granted passage to those who wished to return to Filipinas. Everything was well directed on account of Don Rodrigo's energy. The viceroys, and finally the marquis of Guadalcazar, have given very approving relation of the good qualities that concur in his person, and of his character, prudence, and good management. Thereby it is learned that they are thoroughly satisfied of his person by their treatment. In consideration of that, he was in the former year of 620 elected governor and captain-general and president of the Audiencia of Tierra Firme, which office he at present holds.



Page 16

Don Diego de Cardenas, of the habit of Santiago, brother of the count of La Puebla de Llesena, has served ten years, six of them in the States of Flandes, on all the occasions that offered in his time, especially at the siege of Ostende for thirty months, where he was wounded by an arquebus-shot in the face and a pike-thrust in the arm. Through the satisfaction that Archduke Alebrto had in his person and services, he was given command of a company of Spanish pike infantry, which he had at the victories of Alinguin, Aldoncel, and Arinverque, and at the capture and relief of Grol, and in that of Bolduque, Obstrat, and Gave. After the conclusion of the war, he came to Espana, by the permission of his Highness; and his wife, infanta Dona Isavel, wrote to the king, our sovereign who is in glory, your Majesty's father, recommending him. The marquis of Espinola did the same, and in the year 609 granted him a permit to raise two hundred and fifty infantrymen, whom he led to the expulsion of the Moriscos from the kingdom of Valencia. Having been retired on half-pay, he went with the marquis de la Ynojosa on the expedition of Alarache. Lastly, he was in that of La Mamora, serving at his own cost. In the year of 620, your Majesty rewarded him with the office of governor and captain-general of the province of Yucatan, which he is filling with approval, and with especial attention [to his duties], which he exhibited in the gift that that province sent to your Majesty.

Don Juan de Velasco Castaneda, of the habit of San Tiago, has served for thirty-eight years, commencing his service on the expedition to Ynglaterra. Thence he went to the States of Flandes. There he was given thirty ducados pay to serve near the person of the duke of Parma. He was present at many sieges, captures, and reliefs. He came to these kingdoms in the year 96 to the relief of Cadiz, with Don Pedro de Velasco, who gave him command of an infantry company; and in the year of 593 the adelantado-mayor of Castilla gave him another. With it, he returned to the said States, taking under his charge a troop of ten companies. He continued his services on all occasions that offered, fighting and proving himself therein as a gallant gentleman and a valiant soldier, until the year of 609, when he took part in the expulsion of the Moriscos from Andaluca and the kingdom of Granada. Later he was at Milan where the constable of Castilla employed him in commissions very important to the service of your Majesty. In the year of 617 he was granted the government of Cremona, and afterward made lieutenant of the captain-general of the soldiers of the kingdom of Aragon, having in charge the castle of Xaca; in those places he has served three years with much approval, valor, and prudence, and, in order to preserve his jurisdiction and preeminences, has often risked his life. For that your Majesty has considered yourself well served, and ordered him rewarded for it. Because of the satisfaction that the Council found in his person, they proposed him to your Majesty for the government of the province of Cartagena, to which your Majesty was pleased to appoint him; but as he did not choose to accept it, your Majesty gave it to another person.



Page 17

Don Geronimo de Silva, knight of the Order of St. John—to whom after having served on various occasions, the king our sovereign who is in heaven, your Majesty's grandfather, granted him title as captain in the year 89. He raised two hundred and fifty men for the defense of Portugal. In the year 92, Don Alonso de Bargas gave him a company in the Aragon expedition, where his Majesty ordered him to go to serve with twenty-five ducados pay per month. Having gone to Flandes, he continued with his company in the assaults of Durlans, and in the captures of Chatelet and Cambray, always acting as a valiant and respected gentleman. There he was grievously wounded. In the year 96 the duke of Medina-Sidonia appointed him captain and sargento-mayor of the infantry that he was sending to Portugal. That same year, his Majesty granted him one of the ordinary companies of light cavalry of the state of Milan. In consideration of that, in the year 609 he was given the place of commandant of the forces of Terrenate, and governor of the soldiers of that presidio, which he served until the year 616, when he was promoted to the post of master-of-camp of the military forces of the Filipinas Islands, which he is serving, notwithstanding that the Council has received certain letters condemning his actions.

Will your Majesty appoint one or other of these, according to your pleasure. Madrid, March 7, 1625.

ROYAL DECREE GRANTING INCOME TO THE SOCIETY OF JESUS

Don Juan Nino de Tavora, knight of the Order of Calatraba, comendador of Puerto Llano, whom I have appointed as my governor and captain-general of the Philipinas Islands, or the person or persons in whose charge is or shall be the government of the said islands: Father Francisco Crespo, [5] procurator-general of the Society of Jesus, of the Yndias, in the name of the college of his order in the city of Manila, of the said islands, has reported to me that the church and house of the residence, inasmuch as it was built by the fathers who first went there, is very old, and that it is falling down, on account of the earthquakes that have happened, so that only the house has remained standing, which is in danger of falling also; and that grammar, the arts, and theology have been studied there for more than the last thirty years, from which has followed the benefit that is well known. In respect to its needs, and the expenses that have been incurred in treating the sick, since its alms are very few, and its income very slight, they do not have the wherewithal with which to support the religious who live there, inasmuch as they do not ask any alms for their sacrifices [*i.e.*, masses], or for building their church or house. Although the church is commenced, the building cannot be continued. In consideration of that, he petitions me to concede them there the sixteen thousand ducados, of which concession was made in the sum of one thousand ducados



Page 18

every year for sixteen years to the convent of St. Augustine, of the said city, in tributes of vacant Indians of the said islands, so that with this grant they might continue the erection of the said church, and build a comfortable house in which the religious may live, and apply themselves to the said branches, and where missionaries may be trained with whom to attend to the conversion of the Indians and the preaching of the holy gospel. After having examined what your predecessor and the archbishop of the said city reported to me in my royal Council of the Indias, and after they consulted with me, I have considered it advisable to concede to the college of the Society of Jesus in the said city of Manila, for the present, for each of ten years, one thousand ducados, which amount to three hundred and seventy-five thousand maravedis, in Indians of whom the encomienda shall be vacant, or shall first become vacant, in the said Philipinas Islands, just in the same way as the concession was made to the said convent of the Order of St. Augustine of the said city for its buildings. Accordingly, I command you to assign to the said college of the Society of Jesus in the said city of Manila, the said one thousand ducados in tributes of the Indians whose encomienda shall be vacant, or shall first become vacant, in the said islands, so that this sum may be paid to them in each one of ten years, as above said. You shall give the necessary despatch to this, so that those fathers may be assisted with it for the said purpose. I order the officials of my treasury of the said Filipinas Islands to obey what you shall order by virtue of this my decree; and they shall not place any obstacle to it, notwithstanding anything provided to the contrary. Given in Madrid, June first, one thousand six hundred and twenty-five.

I The King

Countersigned by Don Francisco Ruis de Contreras, and signed by the members of the Council.

LETTER FROM THE ARCHBISHOP TO FELIPE IV

I have informed your Majesty fully of the condition of these Filipinas Islands in all the despatches that have left them, in what concerns both ecclesiastical and secular affairs. As I am certain that my letters have been received in that royal Council, I am now only advising you of the arrival of Governor Don Fernando de Silva, knight of the habit of Santiago, who left these islands for those kingdoms in the former year 21, and returned to govern them about twenty days ago, with the appointment given him by the viceroy of Nueva Espana, marques de Cerralvo. [6] The choice of Don Fernando has seemed a good one, and he is governing well, as one who knows the country and has experience in it, and of the merits of his subordinates; and I see these inhabitants universally contented, [*In the margin*: "Seen."]



Page 19

I find it very unadvisable for religious of any order to go for the present to the kingdom of Japon, and until God shall open the eyes of the emperor—either so that he may receive the holy gospel, or at least not persecute so cruelly those who preach and obey it. His severity is such that he is not satisfied with martyring its preachers with exquisite and extraordinary forms of martyrdoms—as well as those who have received the preachers into their houses and districts, even though ignorant of their identity; but he has issued an edict that no one, under penalty of death, may receive them into his ship. What may cause greater anxiety is the fact that, a number of Japanese being angered by the Dutch, who make port in their kingdom, it will be easy enough both to place these islands in danger, and, what is more, to extinguish the spark of the Catholic faith in these regions. Because of that I called a meeting of the provincials of the orders, so that they should refrain from sending their religious [to Japon] without the governor's orders and mine. Having seen the great difficulties [thus occasioned], and although, convinced of it, they promised compliance, yet their zeal for the saving of souls is so great that, without informing us, they actually sent four religious. I fear great danger from that action, and am powerless to avert the continuation of this, unless your Majesty interpose your powerful hand by ordering absolutely that which, according to this, is most advisable for the service of our Lord and your service.

[*In the margin*: “Let what he says be carefully heeded.”]

Our Lord took Doctor Don Juan de Renteria, bishop of Nueva Segovia, to himself on November 4 of last year, 24, while he was coming from his bishopric to this city of Manila. His loss has been deeply felt in this country, as he was a man of so eminent qualities. Because of the lack of a cabildo in that bishopric I sent a man to govern it, and there is as yet nothing new of moment there of which to inform your Majesty. The inspection of this royal Audiencia and the royal officials, which your Majesty entrusted to the said bishop, was not effected because of his death. Consequently, I am bound by my obligations to your Majesty's service to remind you of what I said in regard to this matter in my letter to that royal Council in the month of August of the former year of 23, which is as follows. “Persons entirely trustworthy and zealous for your Majesty's royal service have informed me of the need of inspecting this royal treasury. If your Majesty be pleased to make choice of the person of Don Juan Cevicos who is at that court attending to affairs of this church, for this matter and for other matters of inspection, I regard it as certain that your Majesty will be well served, as he is one of the most intelligent persons in the Yndias. He also has experience with papers and accounts, so that many people in this city were wont to send such to him; and, even though most complicated,



Page 20

they were very easy for him. Also, since the person mentioned is at that royal court, your Majesty may test his abilities, so that he may serve you therein in like matters of your royal service. These islands have the same need of inspection, especially the cabildo of this city of Manila." I add to the above that no person can be found in that kingdom, nor is there anyone who may go to those kingdoms of the Yndias, more fitted for this employment, nor one, to my way of thinking, of greater zeal.

[*Marginal note*: "Seen."].

The Society of Jesus in these regions need the favor and grace of your Majesty to continue the work of the church of their college in this city of Manila, which they began, trusting to the alms of the faithful. Since those alms have failed, as the country has been and is very much exhausted, and since they are without any aid from your Majesty, it is impossible for them to continue and finish it, as has happened in the building of San Agustin and other churches on which your Majesty has been kind enough to lay your royal hand. The concession that your Majesty was pleased to make to the Society of the passage from the Parian or alcaiceria of the Chinese to their lands on the other side of the river has been of vast importance to them. But they fear lest the hospital of the said Chinese is about to petition your Majesty, not only for confirmation of the passage that they have to the door of the said hospital, but for a limit of distance in which is included the said passage from the lands of the Society, which are two arquebus-shots apart. I inform your Majesty of this, so that, considering the need of the said college, you may order what may be most advisable for your royal service. May our Lord preserve the very Catholic person of your Majesty to us, with increase of your kingdoms, as is necessary for Christendom. Manila, July 25, 1625.

Fray Miguel Garcia Serrano, archbishop of Manila.

[*In the margin*: "That we are advised of this; have this clause filed with what the Society petitions." "This clause was copied."]

[*Endorsed*: "Satisfied. Examined and decreed July 13, 626."]

ROYAL FESTIVITIES AT MANILA

On the fourth day of January, one thousand six hundred and twenty-three, other royal festivities occurred, [7] in which twelve bulls were fought; and four matches of canas were played, each of them between two gentlemen, in accordance with the inclination of the country. The wealth, embroideries, holiday attire, liveries, and ornaments, were so abundant, so sightly, and of so great price and splendor, of so many floral decorations

and of so many different shades, that they surpassed those of our Espana in beauty and splendor.



Page 21

The square was adorned with rich hangings of great value and price, of gold, silk, and variegated cloths, so that one cannot describe so great a variety of colors, the curious adornments in the windows, the great beauty of the women, the richness of their ornaments and clothing, and the concourse of so many conspicuous people; for all the assembly appeared to be a priceless cluster of jewels, and everything by itself a precious gem set in the cluster. And as the country contains so many and so beautiful women—who have, as a rule, faces so angelic—and since the festivities were of so great splendor, and for so great a personage, the like of which were never seen, they eclipsed everything else, and the whole scene formed a sight of beauty and an agreeable garden. About three o'clock in the afternoon, a trumpet began to sound, immediately after which appeared a number of horsemen on fine horses caparisoned and equipped with many beautiful trappings, liveries, and wealth of bands, necklaces, plumes, jewels, and ornaments of gold, precious gems, enamel, and things of great rarity. The ministers of justice followed, and the mace-bearers of the city, besides the magistrates and alcaldes-in-ordinary, who were then Doctor Juan Fernandez de Ledo—a personage worthy of attaining to great heights because of his great modesty, learning, and capacity—and Captain Miguel de Arnalto, an influential citizen, and a man of great virtue. Shortly behind them came the governor's guard, the royal Audiencia, and a number of pages and servants in beautiful and elegant livery. After they had gone the round of the square, the royal Audiencia went to its place, which was located very near the city hall in which are the halls of the regidores and alcaldes, where there are very rich and beautiful balconies.

Each one having taken his seat, two companies of Spanish infantry came in through the square, and formed a guard, one company on one side, and the other on the other side. The arquebusiers and musketeers, firing many shots, discharged their pieces many times against one another in a sham battle that was made, one troop from one company charging on one troop of the other, and the other company doing the same. And as this city is a Salamanca [8] in arms, the soldiers are very skilful and well-disciplined. As the master-of-camp, Don Geronimo de Silva, holds the soldiers under so good discipline, the militia in these regions is very efficient. When troops have become habituated to work and application, they give great delight; and when the officers are firm, and represent splendor and gravity, they hold their subordinates well in restraint and submissive—in which Scipio Africanus, Don Alonso, first king of Naples, and the Great Captain, [9] were marvels. After having spent a little more than half an hour in the military exercise—which caused great pleasure to the spectators, and aroused a furious courage in the ministers of Mars—the soldiers began again to march, some on one side and some on another, passing before the governor and the Audiencia; while the alferезes lowered their banners in salute to their captain-general, and the captains made a profound bow and courtesy, which with the many gala dresses, scarfs, and plumes, made many foolish persons desirous of imitating them.



Page 22

After the infantry had left the square, those delegated from it—namely, General Don Fernando de Ayala, Captain Don Luis Enriquez de Guzman, alcalde-in-ordinary, Captain Martin de Esquivel, chief court constable, and Captain Jose de Naveda, royal alferes—went out to make preparations for the canas match. They were very fine gallants, and had considerable gala livery. Don Fernando de Ayala bestrode a bay horse, with gilded stirrups, bit, buckles, and all the trappings of the same; he wore black hose of Milan buckram, white boots, amber-colored doublet, and jacket of the same cloth as the hose. For a shoulder-sash he wore a heavy chain of gold; and he had a golden plume of great value, and a heavy tuft of heron feathers, also a gilded sword-hilt, and spurs of the same. Captain Don Luis Enriquez bestrode a black Cuatreno horse, with a saddle embroidered with gold and silver edging, a tuft of black and gray feathers, long and very costly hose lined with Milan cloth, jacket of the same, an embroidered doublet, of the workmanship of the hose, black boots, with a chain for a shoulder-sash; a hatband set with rubies, and a plume of great value, consisting of many heron feathers; sword and dagger with gilded furnishings, and sword-belt and waistband embroidered and edged with gold. Captain Martin de Esquivel bestrode a chestnut roadster and was adorned with a plume of many heron feathers, long black hose, black boots, a doublet corresponding to the hose, and a cloth jacket; a gold chain and gilded sword-hilt and dagger and spurs of the same. Captain Jose Naveda was carried by a bay horse, with black tail and mane well combed and long; an embroidered saddle, stirrups, bit, and spurs, gilded and silvered, very beautiful and of great value; a crest of unusually elegant feathers, the one that he carried on Banner day; [10] white boots, red shoulder-sash, long hose of red buckram, jacket embroidered with cloth of gold, an amber-colored doublet with rich gold buttons, a gold sword and dagger of great value; and still more precious were the diamond band and the plume of his hat. All came riding with their gilded staffs, and were followed by many servants and pages, clad in costly and gay livery. They commenced, some on one side, and some on another, to clear the square of the crowd that had gathered to see these royal festivities, and who filled all parts of the square.

Some gentlemen went into the square with their *rejons*. [11] About four in the afternoon, a wild and active bull was turned loose. In two or three light bounds, it made the round of the square, making itself master of it all, with which it made all the people afraid. There several lance-thrusts were given it by the people on foot and those mounted, until, the bull having been overcome, they opened the gate of the square, and delivered it to the secular arm of the infantry, who in quick order gave a good account of it, as was desirable. After three or four bulls had been run, about half past four, the gentlemen

Page 23

who were to engage in the canas [12] matches thought that it was high time to begin them. Accordingly, they went to dress for their entrance, which was made in the following order: One clarion-player went ahead, being followed after a short interval by trumpeters, minstrels, and drummers, all mounted, and clad in livery of different colors. Behind them were two mules, laden with bundles of lances for the canas; one mule bore a covering with the arms of Governor Don Alonso Fajardo, and the other a covering with the arms of the master-of-camp, Don Geronimo de Silva—both coverings being of velvet, and the arms of each person being embroidered on them in gold and silver. They were accompanied by lackeys clad in livery, while others led the horses by the bridle. Then followed thirty-two horses with sixteen gentlemen, besides those who led them in. They formed two files, and came from two opposite positions. The saddlebows of the horses were hung on the outside with the shields of their owners, with enigmas and devices painted on them, and covered with scarfs and tassels. The horses had their breast-leathers covered with hawk's-bells, and all had rich, rare, and costly harnesses and headstalls of gold and silver covered with precious stones, plumes, and sashes, in the utmost profusion.

They entered by a gate of the square and, after making a turn about it, they went out again. When the horses had left, the gentlemen came in on the run two by two, forming eight couples, with their liveries, and lances in hand. Brandishing the latter in their hands, it looked as if the butt ends of the lances of some of the gentlemen were joined with the points [of others]. The horses, spurred on by cries and wounded by the sharp spurs, seemed to fly.

Governor Don Alonso Fajardo made his appearance, in the place assigned to the city, taking as his companion Captain Don Juan Claudio de Verastegui. They were clad in robes of tawny-colored satin embroidered with gold and silver edging. For his cipher the governor had an "S" crowned with palms at the sides, and with scrolls at the foot. On his shield was a blue band, and on that a heart that two hands were opening, with a device as follows: "Well broken, but ill requited." His cap was embroidered, and bore in cipher an "S" of pearls, rubies, and diamonds, so beautiful, costly, and elegant, that it attracted the eyes of the people, as a thing beyond all price; while above his cap was a great tuft of rich feathers, blue, tawny, white, and straw-colored. He was mounted on a grayish horse, of noble bearing, that had a band of very fine cloth covered with pearls and silver embroidery, an embroidered saddle, and gilded stirrups and bit. The furnishings of his sword and dagger were of wrought gold, and formed ornaments of considerable value. His companion had a band of tawny-colored taffeta on his shield, with an "M" as cipher.

Page 24

Then followed General Don Luis Fajardo, the governor's brother, an energetic youth, whose judgment and talent at a so tender age promise great hopes; and he was very splendidly dressed. His companion was Captain Don Juan Alonso de Sosa, regidor of this city, well known for his worth and good qualities. Their livery was of blue satin and gold, embroidered in outline through its field, and many flowers; as cipher they had a "J" while there was a blue band on the shield with letters of gold, that read: "For my king;" and on the streamer of the lance others that read, "Philipus," which was surmounted by a golden crown. Their caps and flying ornaments were very beautiful, and had many feathers and silver embroidery. They were followed by many servants clad in the same livery.

Behind them went Captain Pedro de Chaves, regidor of Manila, son of the master-of-camp, Pedro de Chaves; and as his companion, Alferez Don Mateo de Avila, now captain of infantry. Their livery consisted of straw-colored satin embroidered in rose color, with ornaments of silver. On their shields were bands of rose colored taffeta, bearing in cipher the name of "Isabel," in silver. On the streamers of the lances were the respective ciphers "Isabel" and "Maria," in letters of gold. They bore ornaments of gilded swords and daggers, and great tufts of feathers. The bands of the horses were of taffeta gilded and embroidered in gold. Their boots were silvered, their caps embroidered, and they had many more ornaments. Behind them were Sargento-mayor Pedro de Cuenca Montalvo and his companion Don Diego Maldonado, clad in livery of blue and yellow satin, embroidered in orange color, with many fringes of gold and silver, and as a cipher an "A" surmounted by a golden crown. On the shield was a yellow band, that read in letters of gold: "Steadfast unto death." On the streamers of the lances were these words: "I will be steadfast," and some very green palms.

Captains Diego Lorenzo de Trezo and Luis Alonso de Roa followed in blue livery, which was adorned with many fleurs-de-lis made of silver, edged with wavy lines, and very bright and beautiful. On the shield was a blue band with silver letters that read, "Long live King Philipe Fourth," and on the streamers of the lances was the word, in silver letters, "Philipus." Behind them entered Admiral Don Pedro de Zarate, a prudent youth, and one of great good sense. His companion was Captain Juan Rodriguez del Castillo. Their livery was green, embroidered with gold and silver, and on the shields were tawny-colored bands. On one part of the shield of Captain Juan Rodriguez del Castillo was a tower, and on another a castle, with a chain that encircled both; on one part of the streamers of the lances were the royal arms, and on the other those of the city.



Page 25

They were followed by Captain Mateo de Heredia, ex-factor of the royal treasury, and Captain Silvestre de Aybar, regidor of this city, both worthy of being promoted to higher places by their talent and ability. They wore livery of violet velvet embroidered with many knots of gold and silver, with figures and designs in black and gray, orange, and green, which made an agreeable and very beautiful sight, because of the fine livery and its brilliancy. Their shields had green bands with silver letters that read: "My hopes are the highest." On the streamers of the lances, in illuminated golden letters, was the cipher of the name of "Dorotea." Their caps and the bands of the horses, their boots, and the other ornaments and liveries of the servants were beautiful, and so costly that their value cannot be reckoned.

Lastly went the master-of-camp, Don Geronimo de Silva, so gallant a trooper and so great a gentleman that with reason one may award him the laurel, both for valor and gallantry, and for his wealth and courage, as will yet be made known. The robe that he wore was of yellow satin embroidered in black with palm-trees, with clusters of fruit on them. His shield had a field of solid silver plates edged with gold. His lance was of ebony, and twenty palmos long; and instead of an iron head, a colic-stone, [13] so splendid to the sight and so well made that, however beautiful may be that of a painter, it cannot equal it. It was enclosed in a case of solid gold, a thing of inestimable value for its efficacy and its so brilliant beauty. On the banner was a palm-tree crowned, tassels, a red ribbon with large silver letters that read: "Alas for the delay, if it liveth in thee; but how well lives the faith that thou placedst in me." He wore a cap embroidered with diamonds, rubies, and large pearls, which formed a knot and ornament with a great quantity of seedpearls interwoven with some feathers, and an especially beautiful plume which gleamed among all. He had sword and dagger with furnishings of solid gold. His sword-belt was embroidered with gold of Milan; and his stirrups and spurs, buckles, and all the bolts of the bit and saddlebows were of solid gold. He bestrode a grayish horse, a fine goer, of magnificent spirit and body. He had an embroidered saddle of great value. The band on the horse was set with many pearls and rich embroidery; so that the value of the wealth that he bore was, in the judgment of experienced persons, estimated at nine or ten thousand pesos. In front were lackeys, while behind were his pages, all clad in very showy livery of yellow and black. All had feathers that beautified and glorified the festival. Not of less value and price were the jewels and ornaments of the governor estimated, because of the many diamonds, rubies, topazes, pearls, and other precious gems that he wore; and one could not estimate the value of those of the other gentlemen who engaged in the canas matches.

The charge of this pertained to the master-of-camp, who took as his companion Captain Don Juan Ezquerra, son of General Juan Ezquerra, a prudent and well-inclined gentleman. The latter went out clad in the same livery and habit, and was very splendid and showy.



Page 26

Some erudite person will say what Apelles said to a painter who had painted the picture of Queen Elena richly decked in finery, jewels, gold, and precious stones: "Since thou didst not know how to paint her beautiful, thou didst paint her rich." But I adhere to and declare the truth, and I even curtail in this relation what I might say of it. Although I confess that this relation has not been designedly embellished, it is written rich in truth (which is the greatest beauty and splendor that can be given a history), with which its defects will be supplied, since there is nothing in this life that can be said not to possess some defect.

The gentlemen who were to take part in the play made their entrance in the above manner with great dexterity. They paraded through both sides of the square, couple by couple, in excellent order.

After the entrance, they changed horses; the places were assigned in divisions of fours, and they took their spears. They engaged in a well-concerted play, one division against another, two and two. From that post went out another division against the one that was advancing. It lasted more than an hour, with great gallantry, without any misfortune or disaster happening, until from the plaza the deputies entered their midst and separated them. At that juncture a fiery bull was let out. The gentlemen made very skilful movements against this bull with their rejons, and against others that were run, until the sun's light retired to illuminate the antipodes; and the gentlemen and ladies left the square, and the balconies and galleries [*miradors*], to return to reoccupy them on another occasion one week thereafter, when the same *canas* matches were played, and bulls were run for four days in succession. [14] At this second *canas* match, Don Fernando Galindo, a gentleman of Ecija, and at present infantry captain in this camp, entered instead of Don Diego Maldonado. On this occasion, the governor had another livery of blue cloth and silver, entirely covered with ornaments. The entrance was made as on the first day, and the play was in the same manner—thereby causing general rejoicing because the game had been so skilfully played, and has been so few times seen in this city.

LETTER FROM FERNANDO DE SILVA TO FELIPE IV

Sire:

I advised your Majesty that I left Capulco April 6. That is one of the latest dates on which the ships have set sail, and we were fearful lest we would not make the coasts of these islands, as the weather was contrary—although one can reach them in a voyage of three months, which is the usual duration. When we started, the wind was so light that my fear increased because we did not sail one hundred leguas in thirteen days. During that time I found that my almiranta was sailing very slowly, so that I was obliged to resolve, in order not to risk everything, to leave it, with a goodly supply of food for a longer



Page 27

voyage. Considering how easily the almiranta could be wrecked, and that the enemy would be waiting in the strait for a prize of so great profit; and that if once they sighted the almiranta, escape was impossible, while I could not be of any aid, as I was quite without resources: I thought it advisable for your Majesty's service to take out all your silver and that of private persons, trusting that I would not have the enemy any more to windward as had been the case while I was coming. This seems to have been the proper course, for I made the port of Cavite July eight. I arrived at so opportune a season, that I believe the islands were never in so great need of a new government and such aid. For the Audiencia having objected to the directions sent them in your name by the marquis de Yelbes [*i.e.*, Gelves], ordering them not to interpret doubtfully the decree in which your Majesty gave him authority to do so, although he cited in those decrees your Majesty's own signature, and that of the notary before whom it was drawn, retained the government for itself, and by its own authority gave the title of captain-general to Don Geronimo de Ssilba. Thus did the obstacle that your Majesty has experienced at other times of like government remain in the greatest force and vigor. According to what I have heard, the matter came to such a pass that most of the citizens of Manila were only waiting to abandon this city, [that depending on] whether or not the aid should arrive from Nueva Espana; for they were exhausted with the extortions and bad treatment of the Audiencia. Their first action was to dismiss those whom Don Alonso Fajardo had lawfully appointed to offices of justice, without allowing them to complete their first year. [*In the margin*: "Seen."]

Their second—the auditors being dissatisfied with the honesty of Licentiate Don Alvaro de Mesa y Lugo, their associate, who as the senior auditor presided over them—was to admit Licentiate Geronimo de Legaspi into the assembly hall by a secret postern. He had been removed from office a long time before by act of the said Don Alonso Fajardo, a measure taken in virtue of your Majesty's decree which was sent, to take his residencia; this was confirmed by all the Audiencia. Although it was advisable to remedy that matter, the little time that I have had since my arrival until now, and my heavy press of unfinished business, and what has happened in regard to forced aid sent to various provinces, with the despatch of the vessels to Nueva Espana, and the ordinary transaction of business, have not permitted it. I shall ask for the documents, and after examining them, and after mature deliberation, I shall do what shall seem expedient for the service of your Majesty and the quiet of this community, as I may find it. My course is hastened by the return of the said Licentiate Legaspi to his post, as it is without your Majesty's order, and as, when he is there, he heeds only his own interests. [*In the margin*: "See what has been decreed in this particular. Have it brought."]



Page 28

From the day of my arrival until now, there have been dissensions and quarrels among the members [of the Audiencia], because they did not agree in the division of offices. That was a matter of no slight importance, because not all the appointments had been given to them, as well as the encomiendas. And although your Majesty, seeing this danger before, prohibits it by your royal decrees, they apportioned some of the latter. I have regarded such encomiendas as vacant, ordering that their tributes be placed in the royal treasury. [*In the margin*: "It is well. Advise the new governor that this decision is approved, and that he shall put it into practice accordingly."]

The auditors of this Audiencia are all at odds. Some among them are continually refusing to act, influenced by the confidants, and even abetting these. As a result, in the sessions of the court there is nothing to be observed except dissensions; and thus the despatch of business is delayed, by the rehearings [of cases] that proceed from the tie-votes [of the auditors]. Thus they accept the salaries for their posts without serving them, so far as their judicature is concerned, which is a wrong that urgently needs remedy, for the litigants. [*In the margin*: "Seen."] The Dutch enemy came to this coast with a fleet of three large vessels and two small ones, while your Majesty had at the port of Cavite two galleons of very heavy burden, three of five hundred or six hundred toneladas of the northern sea, one patache of more than two hundred and fifty toneladas, and two galleys, together with many good soldiers and sailors and a goodly abundance of heavy artillery. Within forty days or thereabout, they were all ready to sail, and in charge of the master-of-camp, Don Geronimo de Silba. He encountered the enemy, but did not fight, after an expense in preparing that fleet, of many more ducados than the condition of the treasury could warrant; I found the treasury pledged to about one hundred and ten thousand pesos, while the infantry and substitutes were loaded with vouchers against it, because of the lack of reinforcements for more than a year back. The matter is so serious that the captain-general, Don Geronimo de Ssilva, having been arrested, by the Audiencia, and deposed from his office, appealed the cause to me, and I do not dare write more minutely concerning it, because of the short time. The verbal process is made, and, the said Don Geronimo's deposition having been taken, both he and the commanders of the other ships will be prosecuted. All claim that they will be cleared; each one throwing the burden of guilt on the other. When the matter assumes a proper condition I shall remit an account of it to your Majesty, so that you may take the measures advisable. [*In the margin*: "File."]

Page 29

Under pretext of the arrest and removal of Don Geronimo de Silva, Licentiate Legaspi, not heeding the second nomination from the ships, exercised the office of captain-general, carrying the staff of office and making them lower the banners to him, and address him as “your Lordship,” and his wife as “my lady.” He immediately appointed his elder son to the post of sargento-mayor of this camp, and his younger son to a company, while another company was assigned to a relative of Auditor Don Matias Flores y Cassila. Others were assigned to brothers of the said Don Matias, the fiscal, and other auditors, except Don Albaro, who refused to have anything given to his household. Upon seeing the illegality of those appointments, I issued an act declaring them vacant and restoring those posts to those who had held them before.

I did the same in regard to the posts that I found filled for the ships which I am despatching now to Nueva Espana, as those appointments were not made to suitable persons. Such were holding them with their followers by illegal means and had no services or qualifications, although there are persons of excellent abilities, as are those who now hold them.

The ships are the best and most suitable that have sailed hence for a number of years past, and are of five hundred or six hundred tons burden apiece. They are well equipped with artillery and other necessities. They are heavily laden, for, although the enemy was along the coasts in smaller craft than other years, this year the Chinese came and have brought the Portuguese from Macan. Regarding the danger that might be feared on the coast of Nueva Espana from a Dutch fleet which we heard would pass through the strait of Magallanes, I left the viceroy warned, so that when those ships can reach that coast, he will have a sentinel and lookout at the island of Cedros, in front of the gulf of California—where they are ordered to reconnoiter the enemy’s condition, and where the foe never expect them—and with a port to windward of the cape of Corrientes, which is the place where they may be awaited; with that I trust, God helping, that they will be secure.

Eleven of the fourteen Dutch ships that passed [the strait] this year went to Capulco; they were those which the pirate took from Olanda. Seven of them were large ships, and four small; three of them were captured in Piru. They reached Terrenate with all of them, and with eight hundred men aboard. Accordingly I believe that they will come here in a few months; and as this state and its conservation depends on maritime forces (as does that of all the islands of the world); and as the building of three ships of the size of these two (which, as it could not be avoided, are going to Nueva Espana) resulted, I hope from the willingness with which the fathers of the Society offer to make two ships for me in the province of Leyte (where they have their missions), and the Franciscans another in those of Camarines, that they will be provided for me. The condition of the royal treasury and your Majesty’s heavy expenses on the point of Cavite require that very urgently.



Page 30

Having found the magazines so empty of everything needed (which supplies, it seems, have been stolen from them), I was accordingly forced to send a ship to Japon with products that are esteemed there, in order to exchange them for things needed here. [*In the margin*: "Seen."]

Affairs in that kingdom are so bloody because of the matter of religion, that it is a lamentable thing. Ships are sent with great danger because of the close scrutiny that the Japanese make, in their fear lest religious are conveyed in them. The embassy returned, after so heavy expenses, without those barbarians having been willing to receive it. It sailed very late, since it gave the Dutch opportunity to believe, and to give that emperor to understand, that your Majesty's vassals were entering under pretense of religion to despoil them of their kingdoms.

Sargento-mayor Don Fernando de Silba, who returned with the reenforcements that he took to Macan, put in at the kingdom of Sian with one of your Majesty's ships, some artillery, and seventy Spaniards. As I have been informed, endeavor was made to carry matters with so high a hand that the natives, aided by Japanese, decapitated him and most of his men; while about thirty of them are in prison, and most of the property of your Lordship from this place, quite a large amount, is in the power of that king. I shall endeavor with all my power to collect them peaceably; for the enemy, since they are on the lookout for us, give no opportunity to punish the deed.

We have heard that Nun Albaros Botello has had good results in two battles in East India with the Dutch, over Ormus; and that he expected the recovery of those forts. However, I doubt it, because of the scant obedience of the Portuguese to the officers who commanded them in war, [*In the margin*: "Seen."]

The province of Cagayan has continued in revolt. I shall immediately provide a remedy, and hope to obtain one, by ordering those troops for its conquest not to leave it, as they have done hitherto, but to fortify and maintain themselves; for by their leaving the natives their fields and palm plantations, two consecutive years are necessary to reduce them. [*In the margin*: "Seen."]

The bishop of that province, Don Juan de Rrenteria, to whom your Majesty committed the general inspection of this royal Audiencia, died November 4 of last year. If your Majesty should decide to send another person for this place rather than for another place, it is necessary, as also that he be one who has experience, and is disinterested and conscientious. [*In the margin*: "Seen."]



Page 31

The forts of Terrenate are garrisoned with soldiers and necessary supplies, although all, as I have heard, are quite discontented with their governor, Pedro de Heredia, because of his trade and intercourse with the enemy, of which they accuse him, and his usurpation of the duties from the export of cloves and other things. I shall investigate the truth and advise your Majesty of the result, and in the meantime I shall correct the matter. The enemy have dismantled the forts of Calomatas and Motil, and are, as I believe, somewhat weakened in those districts. I shall send the usual expedition early, with what is asked from me from there; and shall endeavor to secure very friendly intercourse with the king of Macassar, who proves himself ever a most zealous servitor of your Majesty, which is of importance for Maluco affairs. [*In the margin*: “File.”]

The Ternatans beg urgently for this king whom we are keeping here in prison, and offer to make treaties of peace—although it would mean no more than to divide them between father and son, and to join the powerful Chile, for all are hostile. It would surely be advisable, for if what they offer were not obtained, the king is nothing more than an old and worn-out Moro, who remains here to no purpose, consuming your Majesty’s revenues. [*In the margin*: “See whether provision has been made in this matter. Discuss it in a letter to Don Juan Nino de Tabora.”]

Your Majesty orders me to advise you of the mines of the Ygolotes, [15] and the success of the nutmeg of La Laguna. The latter is considered as wild nutmeg, and now as of no importance. I shall endeavor to ascertain whether it may be cultivated, and shall attempt to do so. More than fifty thousand pesos were spent in the mines, but nothing was found at last. A quantity of rocks were sent to Nueva Espana, in order to be assayed there, as we had no one here who understood it; and, the soldiers having been withdrawn, that exploration was abandoned, as a matter that did not have the desired result.

[*In the margin*: “Seen; have Don Juan Nino de Tabora inform me more minutely of this.”]

I found this city without regidores, because the Audiencia had removed those who held that office. By virtue of a decree of your Majesty, the observance of which was demanded by the fiscal, those offices were offered at auction; but only two of them were sold. The purchasers were persons whose standing did your Majesty but know, you would surely not consider yourself served that [these offices should be sold] for so small a price as is two thousand pesos for each—and one thousand pesos of that sum was paid in due-bills. They should be discontinued, to be conceded to the persons of highest standing in this community, who because of their good character will attend more carefully to your Majesty’s service, and the conservation and increase of the community, than do those who buy them; for the latter generally try to get from the



Page 32

community the sum that the offices cost them. However, I am ordering the proclamations to be continued; and if there are no persons to buy the offices, after the time-limit has expired I shall appoint the most suitable persons to them, with the guarantee that, if your Majesty shall not consider this satisfactory, they shall pay to the treasury the maximum price for which any of the offices shall have been sold." [16] [*In the margin*: "Gather what has been decreed and bring it here for all the councilors. Bring the general decree which was despatched ordering those offices to be sold. Inform the governor and Audiencia that there must be no innovation."]

Some years [*illegible words in MS.*] in the additional two per cent duty that your Majesty ordered to be paid on the goods sent to Nueva Espana from here, attentive to the petition that they presented. I assure your Majesty that the trade has so greatly decreased, and the succors that the inhabitants here furnish to the royal treasury are so great, that even if the continual personal service with which they generally serve your Majesty did not deserve such a favor, this additional duty should be remitted; for I consider it impossible that at the price goods are bought here they can pay the duty. Will your Majesty decide what is most advisable, and order what is your pleasure. [*In the margin*: "Let those [papers] necessary be brought."]

Your Majesty has no need so pressing in any part of the world as that your governors should have authority to remove or promote religious missionaries to the natives from the districts where they are, because of their lawless and loose mode of life. That has come to such a pass that they have lost respect, by their deeds, for the alcaldes-mayor, and the said religious do not pay any attention to their jurisdiction or to the royal patronage. The Augustinians, who are more exorbitant than others, are very owners of the wills of the Indians, and give out that the quiet or disobedience of the latter hinges on them. For when the alcalde-mayor of Balayan tried to restrain the excesses that he saw, they entered his house armed, and bound and flogged him; that was during the government of the Audiencia. But lately another alcalde-mayor, in Bulacan, having arrested two Indians, seamen on a ship of your Majesty's fleet, so that they might serve at their posts, the religious at that place took them out of prison. Even more oppressive acts occur daily, which need a severe remedy. I petition your Majesty to have sent to me the decree which was sent to Nueva Espana this past year, with more definite restrictions, so that they may not have any ground for opposing it, and so that their generals, especially he of St. Augustine, may order them to restrain themselves, and so that his Holiness may do the same, the briefs or patents being passed by the Council and everything being sent to me. So great haste is necessary in order not to fall out with them. [*In*



Page 33

the margin: “Send that decree, and write to the governor and archbishop to summon the provincial of the Augustinians and tell him how advisable it is to punish that religious, and those who act so; and have them advised that no mission shall under any consideration be granted to religious against whom such accusations are made. Have them advise us of what is done.” “This decree was carried out.”]

I am quartering the infantry, and am surprised that it has not been done in so many years. It is not causing any expense to the royal treasury. For, besides that it is impossible that the soldiers be well disciplined in any other way—three-fourths living, as they do, outside the city—I trust that by this means a much smaller number will die, and that many offenses against God will be avoided.

Although your Majesty has often been petitioned from this country to aid these islands with a fleet, my experience in sailing to India by way of the cape of Buena Esperanca, and outside the island of San Lorenzo, causes me to desist from that request, as I consider it impossible. But considering that the forces here are for naught else than defensive war, and how important it would be to dislodge the enemy from the Malucas Islands, it seems to me an easier and more advisable method for your Majesty to send the soldiers and sailors who could be a reenforcement, at the account of Philipinas, in the merchant vessels of the trading-fleets [from Espana], so that in due time they might be taken from San Juan de Ulua, together with the men raised in Nueva Espana, to the port of Acapulco. For if sufficient money be sent from Nueva Espana, better ships can be built no-where than here; and thereby could be attained what I doubt greatly could be secured in any other way.

Don Bernardino del Castillo, castellan of this fort of Santiago, has died. I have appointed in his place, and I trust that your Majesty will confirm it, or appoint him to that post, Governor Lucas de Vergara Gavira, who has been governor of the forces of Terrenate, and who served your Majesty with approval in Flandes and in these regions for many years.

The island of Ermosa lies between Great China and the province of Ylocos, which is situated in these islands. There is so short a distance from one part to the other that one can cross over in one night. Although my predecessor, Don Alonso Fajardo, was advised that the Dutch were thinking of fortifying themselves there, and how important it was to these islands to gain the position, he did not do so, perhaps because the enemy were more powerful. Now the latter have a fort with four ramparts (two of stone), which will soon be completed, for the Chinese subjects of that kingdom are helping them. The island has no port for large ships; but the Dutch, together with Japanese, did considerable damage with small craft—so much, in fact, that the past year they captured a vessel with thirty thousand pesos. If time and opportunity permit, I shall endeavor to gain a foothold in another port, in order to drive out the Dutch in the future from what they have there now. If your Majesty would establish a factory there, it would

result in the complete restoration of this country to its old-time luster, and with greater prosperity.



Page 34

The treasury accountants of the City of Mexico have this year exceeded their authority, contrary to the provisions of section 24 of the last ordinances which your Majesty gave to the said treasury accountants, and ordered them to observe, in the year 609. For the ordinances of this royal Audiencia made in the year 1596 are in force—sections 67 and 69 of which treat of the manner in which the accounts of the royal officials are to be audited; and section 29, of the powers given to them for the exercise of their offices—and section 22 of those given to the said accountants in the year of the foundation of that tribunal, which was the year 1609; and the said section 24, lastly, rules that after auditing the accounts in this Audiencia, they shall be sent to Mexico, so that, having been examined, the officials there may inform your Majesty of their opinion. Not heeding that, they have, by extending their jurisdiction, rendered decisions against the royal officials of this treasury in the review of their accounts, and have added things to these, which [these royal officials], as they do not bear them in mind, judge to be unnecessary. It can easily be understood that since your Majesty, by the said section 24, ordered these accounts to be audited here by the president, two auditors, and the fiscal, because of the long distance to Mexico, they are not again to be judged by an inferior tribunal; since these ministers are not to be accused twice for one cause, nor even are additions to be lodged against them, as those in Mexico do. Will your Majesty order them to refrain from sending such despatches through their tribunals, without having your Majesty's new commission for it, thus annulling the said ordinances and sections. I assure your Majesty of what I can testify, that the royal officials in few regions serve with greater fidelity and trust than those here, with continual aid in the documents and other things in their charge. [*In the margin*: "Have what the royal officials write about this matter brought." "This section was copied."]

Your Majesty orders me to give you information as to how General Rodrigo de Guillestegui, who is commander of the vessels that sail to Nueva Espana this year, may be granted reward. According to his good service here and his great capability, the future succession [to the command] of this fort, or that to the post of master-of-camp, will be very well entrusted to him.

I knew the master-of-camp, Don Luis de Bracamonte, in Flandes, all the time while he was in those states. He served there for seven years in a most satisfactory manner, when he came to these islands with pay of eighty escudos. With that pay, he served in the government of Terrenate until your Majesty appointed a person to that office. He is poor and out of employment. I beseech your Majesty to be pleased to show him honor and to reward him, since his rank and services deserve it.

Your Majesty also has here one Captain Don Antonio de Vera, captain in this camp, who has served for many years, of which I can testify as an eyewitness from the States of Flandes. He desires your Majesty to reward him with a habit; and beyond doubt that will be well bestowed, and a great encouragement to those who are serving here.



Page 35

I found Admiral Don Cristoval de Lugo i Montalbo here, a man of very well-known character, and who has rendered excellent service in Milan, and in the wars of Saboya and Piamonte [*i.e.*, Savoy and Piedmont]. I have busied him in the post of chief commandant of Pintados, and as my lieutenant in military matters of that province. He deserves honor and reward from your Majesty.

Your Majesty conceded for another lifetime to my wife, Dona Maria de Ssalacar (whose parents and grandparents served your Majesty well in these regions), the encomiendas that her mother possessed. Inasmuch as I am so liable to die at any occasion in your Majesty's service that may arise, which desired end I shall endeavor to attain; and since she cannot remain decently as a widow in this country: I petition your Majesty, in consideration of all my services and those of her father and grandfather, to reward her, and to concede to her, for the time while she holds it, absence from the said encomiendas, that she may enjoy them wherever she pleases to dwell. For that will not result in any harm to a third party, nor can the personal presence of a woman be of any service to your Majesty. This reward can not serve as a precedent, while there are many other precedents in other parts of the Indias to private persons (and they not of my position) [that render it possible].

The almiranta arrived July 29, and its being able to get here seems miraculous, as this is the season when there are no vendavals. I am giving employment to all the paid substitutes possible, in order to stop to some extent the so great waste of the royal treasury, which such men use up without any profit.

I found the deanship of this holy church vacant because of the death of Don Francisco Gomez de Arrellano. On the twenty-eighth of the past month the archdeanship fell vacant because of the death of Ssantiago de Castro. I have made presentations in the following dignities in your Majesty's name, for your royal patronage, *ad interim*, and I trust that your Majesty will confirm them: dean, precentor, schoolmaster, archdean, one canon for the precentorship, one cura for the schoolmaster, canon, one racionero, in the ration of Lorenzo Rramirez—all persons of proved virtue and deserving of these rewards. May God preserve your Majesty. Manila, August 4, 1625.

Fernando de Silva

DOCUMENTS OF 1626

Letter from the archbishop to Felipe IV. Miguel Garcia Serrano; July 25. Letter to Felipe IV. Fernando de Silva; July 30. Letter from the sisters of St. Clare to Felipe IV. Jeronima de la Asunsion, and others; July 31. Petition for aid to the seminary of San Juan Letran. Juan Geronimo de Guerrero; August 1. Royal decrees. Felipe IV; June-October. Military affairs of the islands. [Unsigned]; 1626.

Sources: Most of these documents are obtained from MSS. in the Archivo general de Indias, Sevilla. The last two of the “Royal decrees” are from MSS. in the Archivo Historico Nacional, Madrid; and the sixth document is from a rare pamphlet in the British Museum, London.



Page 36

Translations: These are all made by James A. Robertson, except the second, by Robert W. Haight.

LETTER FROM ARCHBISHOP SERRANO TO FELIPE IV

Sire:

In the ships that came from Nueva Espana to these islands this last month of June, I received a decree of your Majesty dated Madrid, December six of the former year six hundred and twenty-four, with a copy of the one that your Majesty wrote to the governor of these islands, in respect to the gold mines of the Ygolotes. I shall discuss it with the said governor, as your Majesty orders, as soon as this despatch shall be made, which will be at the end of this month. I shall exert all the effort possible, so far as I am concerned, so that your Majesty may be well served in everything. I believe that Governor Don Juan Nino de Tavora will not be lacking in the same, for he shows very earnest desires to employ himself in your Majesty's service. [*In the margin:* "That it is well."]

I received two other decrees, of the fourteenth and thirtieth of August, of the same year, in which your Majesty is pleased to lay down the form that must be observed in the visitation of the missionary religious; and ordering that the latter may not make arrests or employ stocks or prisons, or fiscals or constables who make arrests, besides those whom the archbishop or bishop shall assign, or who shall have the latter's authority to do so in cases permitted by law—all of which will be observed and obeyed as your Majesty orders, [*In the margin:* "Seen."]

In another decree, of June twenty of the past year twenty-five, your Majesty also orders me to inform you, with the distinctness and clearness necessary for the better understanding of what you desire, of the annual incomes and values of the benefices and revenues of this archbishopric of Manila, and what sum pertains to the dignidades, canonries, and prebends, both of this church and of the others of my diocese. [Your Majesty also asks for] the number in each church; how many beneficed curacies there are in each district, and their income; the number of missions, their value, and whether they are in charge of seculars or religious of the orders. I gave your Majesty a long account of that in a letter that I wrote the former year of six hundred and twenty-one on the twenty-fifth of July, to which I have had answer from that royal Council that it was received in the following year of six hundred and twenty-two. I only neglected to place in that letter the incomes of the archbishopric and the prebends of this church—taking that for granted, as a matter very well known, since your Majesty sustains both the archbishop and the dignidades, canonries, and prebends from your royal treasury, because there is no other source, and the tithes are not sufficient. The latter are placed in the said treasury, and are collected at the account of your Majesty. They



Page 37

amount to a very small sum, since, from what I have experienced, only the stock farms of the larger cattle of the Spaniards pay tithes to your Majesty, and that has not, as yet, been practiced with the Indians. Consequently your Majesty pays the archbishop a salary of three thousand ducados of eleven reals each; the dean, six hundred pesos of eight-real pieces; the four dignities of archdean, precentor, schoolmaster, and treasurer, five hundred pesos; four canons, four hundred pesos; two raciones, three hundred pesos; two media-raciones, each two hundred pesos—all paid in thirds. Consequently both the archbishop and his prebendaries suffer abundant misery; and, because of that, your Majesty is petitioned to favor us by increasing these salaries, since they hardly suffice to pay their house-rent, and support them very moderately. [*In the margin*: “Set down everything in the books that have been ordered to be made.”]

This cathedral church has no other revenue than the alms received from burials; and if it were not for the four hundred pesos that your Majesty has granted it for a limited time, it would have nothing for the wine, wax, and flour for divine worship. With this and with some allotment of cargo (although little) that the city generally gives it, the band of musicians, who come to serve on their feast days in the same church, is maintained.

What seculars administer in this archbishopric is divided into nine benefices, besides the three curacies of Spaniards in Manila, Santiago (which is in Manila’s suburbs), and the port of Cavite. Twenty thousand souls are ministered to in the said benefices. [*In the margin*: “*Idem.*”] [17]

The Order of St. Augustine has thirty-two convents, in all of which are fifty-six priests, who have in charge ninety thousand souls.

The Order of St. Francis has thirty-eight convents, with guardianias and presidencies, in which are forty-seven priests. In all of them forty-eight thousand four hundred souls are ministered to.

The Order of St. Dominic has three convents in this archbishopric. It ministers to three thousand souls, and has five religious.

The Society of Jesus has eight priests in three residences, and ministers to ten thousand six hundred souls.

The discalced Augustinians have three convents in which are six priests. They minister to eight thousand souls.

Consequently, the souls of the natives alone who are ministered to in the district of this archbishopric of Manila amount to two hundred and one thousand, six hundred souls.



The bishopric of Nueva Segovia has four secular benefices, two of them for Spaniards, one in the said city of Nueva Segovia, and the other in Villa Fernandina. The other two benefices are for Indians.

The Order of St. Augustine has fifteen convents in this bishopric, and they minister to fifty-eight thousand souls there.

The Order of St. Dominic has twenty-five convents in the said bishopric, in the province of Cagayan and that of Pangasinan. They minister to seventy thousand souls in these.



Page 38

Consequently the number of souls of the natives ministered to in the said bishopric of Nueva Segovia is one hundred and twenty-eight thousand.

There are six secular benefices in the bishopric of Camarines, whose seat is in the city of Caceres. They minister to ten thousand six hundred souls.

The Order of St. Francis has twenty-four convents, with guardianias and presidencies, in this bishopric, and minister to forty-five thousand souls.

All the souls ministered to in the said bishopric of Camarines amount to fifty-six thousand eight hundred.

These two churches of Caceres and Nueva Segovia (and the bishop of Zibu gives account of the church there to your Majesty) have no prebendaries; and there is no one besides the cura, who serves the said church and ministers to the few Spaniards there.

Each of the secular beneficiaries in these islands has an annual stipend of one hundred and ninety pesos, which are paid from your Majesty's royal treasury to those who minister to your royal tributarios. The same sum is paid to the religious, except that the ninety pesos are given in rice. To both classes is given one arroba of Castilian wine, and flour for the mass. The other encomenderos give the same to the ministers of their encomiendas.

Now then I have satisfied what your Majesty orders me by the aforesaid royal decree, as clearly as possible. If I have not named the villages and chief places of the benefices, the reason is that I believe myself excused from that labor.

The government of Don Fernando de Silva, knight of the habit of Sanctiago, during this interim in these islands has been very successful; and he has proceeded as prudently as if he had exercised the government for many years. He has secured peace both with the royal Audiencia and with all the other corporations.

He has occupied a port of the island of Hermosa—the best or only good one—which was so recommended and ordered to be occupied by his Majesty Phillippo Second, your Majesty's grandfather, in the instructions ordered given to Governor Don Francisco Tello; of its importance, time will tell. It has seemed a desirable thing, at least in the present, so that the Dutch shall not have the opportunity that they desire for taking the silk from China and transporting it to Europa and to Japon. That brought them very great wealth; for, selling it for the bars of silver with which the latter kingdom abounds, the Dutch had money enough to continue the trade with China. They shortened the voyage every year to that country. Don Fernando de Silva also built a galleon that is now in the port of Cavite. He built some small rooms or quarters of stone for the soldiers in the Plaza de Armas, wherein three hundred men may be lodged, without the expenditure of a single peso from your Majesty's royal treasury. He is a calm and



prudent man, one of good example, fearful of God, and zealous for your Majesty's service and the increase of your royal treasury. He has abilities for governing, and if your Majesty occupies him in other governments, you will be as well served as you have been during the time while he has had this charge. [*In the margin*: "That we are advised of what he says."]



Page 39

Governor Don Juan Nino de Tavora, who just arrived in these ships that came from Nueva Espana with reinforcements, shows excellent valor and zeal for the service of your Majesty; and if God grants him life to execute the good purposes that he evidently possesses, I doubt not that these islands will not only lift their head, but that they will return to their former grandeur. He has entered on his government with a secure foothold, since he finds them free from the Dutch enemy—who have allowed us to breathe this year, and have given opportunity for more ships to come from China than for several years past. The same has been true of the ships from Goa, India, and Macan. All of them have entered the port of Cavite; so that already this community appears another and a very different one from what it was before. I trust, with the help of His Divine Majesty, that the governor will aid it, for the proofs that he has hitherto given are those of an excellent governor and Christian, and one fearful of his conscience.

Although we have had no Dutch enemies this past year, powerful enemies of the inhabitants about these islands have not been wanting to disturb the natives and those whom they capture suddenly in the villages of the coast. It is a thing that I have experienced myself, suffering so great anguish that I thought I should lose my life in it; for I found myself surrounded by thirty-four caracoas and galeotas of Mahometan enemies—Borneans, Joloans, Camucones, and Mindanaos—about one hundred leguas from this city of Manila, while going to visit my district at a village called Cabotagan. They assaulted me at five in the morning, while I and all my retinue were asleep. We awoke at the clamors, and had no other resolution or opportunity to take than to flee to the mountain; for we were abed, as I have stated. I secured my habit and girdle, which was a not slight act of mercy from the Lord, because of what I afterward suffered in the mountain, until the necessary clothing and food were brought to me and my followers from Manila. Although Governor Fernando de Silva exerted himself by sending men and several vessels in different directions after the enemy, he did not have the good luck to fall in with them. The new governor, Don Juan Nino de Tavora, tells me that he will make every effort to chastise those barbarians and assure the coasts. I trust thoroughly that he will succeed in his holy purpose, because he has so well understood that it is greatly to the service of our Lord and of your Majesty. [*In the margin:* “Thank him for his care in visiting his bishopric, and say that we are assured of his zeal, and trust that the same will be exercised in the future—in consideration of which, account will be taken of his person as opportunity offers, so that he may be promoted. Have a letter sent to Don Juan Nino, telling him what the archbishop writes of him; thank him, and let him advise us of what has been done.”]



Page 40

Doctor Don Alvaro de Mesa y Lugo, auditor of this royal Audiencia, is one of the persons who most evidently excel in your Majesty's royal service, and who most firmly defend everything touching it, in both matters of justice and of revenue. He has ever been so keen a defender of your Majesty's interests that he has suffered for that many and very great annoyances and troubles. Thus has he shown by his actions that he has a very upright conscience. From this it results that he suffers great necessity, because he has not allowed or opened the door even to the gratuities that seem lawful to others not so well regulated in conscience. In short, his actions are such that I am obliged to continue in this letter, as in others, to inform your Majesty of his good and praiseworthy qualities. Will your Majesty, upon knowing them, be pleased to promote him and advance him to other posts of greater importance. I find him sufficiently capable and deserving of much better posts; for, wherever it please your Majesty to reward him, your Majesty will be well served, and he will be free from the sickness and the lack of health with which he lives in this country, to employ himself much better in your Majesty's service. [*In the margin*: "At hand."]

I was expecting the bishop of Nueva Caceres this year, according to letters sent me last year. Not only has he not come, but also not even have I had any letter from him. Consequently I am appointing a governor of that bishopric for the good and necessary expedition of the ecclesiastical causes, which are falling behind for lack of the judge of appeals. Although those appeals could go to the tribunal of the bishopric of Zibu, it is necessary to conclude definitively that there be a third tribunal, according to the brief obtained by your Majesty regarding appeals. Consequently, it is necessary to provide now and henceforth for the government of the bishopric of Nueva Segovia, until the arrival of the rightfully-appointed bishop whom your Majesty may be pleased to send to that church. [*In the margin*: "That it is well, and that the necessary provision has been made in this, and the viceroy directed to make him embark."]

Because we have settled in the island of Hermosa, our obligations to send ministers to those heathen nations who inhabit it, and are without the light of the holy gospel, are increased. The conquest or settlement has been effected by the energy of Fray Bartolome Martinez of the Order of St. Dominic, the present provincial of this province. To him is due the excellent success that it has hitherto had; for he himself, with other three or four associates, and no other order, went to explore it. They remained there and sent one religious here to Manila to report what had been done, and to get an order from the governor for what was to be done in the future. The island is densely populated, as they will relate to your Majesty. It will be a pity for those peoples to remain in the obscurity of their blindness,



Page 41

without the light of our holy Catholic faith, for lack of ministers. Since the fathers of St Dominic have taken that conquest in charge, it will be very advisable for the present to settle it with religious of that order, if your Majesty be pleased to have a goodly consignment of religious sent to them; for, although eighteen or twenty of them came in these ships, the need of this province was so great, because of the many who have died, that scarcely are there sufficient for their ministries, even if they did not have the island of Hermosa, as I have said. [*In the margin*: “They have been given to them already.”]

Governor Don Juan Nino will report on the other matters touching this community. Consequently I shall not relate them in this letter to your Majesty, whose very Catholic person may our Lord preserve, with the increase of great kingdoms, as is necessary to Christendom. Manila, July 25, 1626.

Fray Miguel, archbishop of Manila.

[*Endorsed*: “Manila. To his Majesty; 1626. The archbishop of Manila, [*MS. holed*] of July. Seen and decreed within, July 30, 627.”]

LETTER FROM FERNANDO DE SILVA TO FELIPE IV

Sire:

Last year I advised your Majesty of the state in which I found these islands; and now I could tell you that they have not been in better condition for thirty years past. I kiss your Majesty's hand for the great favor which you do me in sending as my successor Don Juan Nino de Tabora, a person who, I am confident, will carry out whatever is ordered there for the service of your Majesty; for my part I shall aid him as much as I can, without heeding trifles.

As the despatch of last year was made early, the ships arrived at Nueva Espana in less than six months, and returned to this city on the twenty-eighth of June, the day on which the governor took possession of these offices.

The commander of the Terrenate relief expedition arrived, and we learn from those forts that all the aid reached them, as it was sent early—which could not have been accomplished if it had been eight days later. They are in peace and well provisioned, since the people of Terrenate and Tidore are friendly. They likewise inform us that the fort of Calomata, which the enemy dismantled, which is half a legua from Malayo, has been fortified, because it was understood that the Dutch were about to come back



again; and that the natives killed two hundred men of the enemy, who had arrived to punish them with fifteen ships, which seem few for those seas.

This year there has been peace everywhere in this commonwealth, and I have maintained it with the Audiencia—being patient with them when necessary, and at times administering rebuke, whereby your Majesty's service was furthered. Commodities have been cheap, and all necessary supplies have been procured without our having felt the much-feared failure of iron, bronze, and tin from Japon. Through my diligence, there is abundance in the warehouses, with which we could construct and cast [cannon for] fifty moulds which I have had made for more than four months, whereby the islands are fully supplied with the necessary artillery.

Page 42

Of the ships which I informed you were being built, one is in Cavite, and the other, it is supposed, can be completed by Christmas, each of them of a thousand toneladas of the North Sea. Two galleys are likewise being finished, which makes a sufficient fleet for anything which may happen here. By the way, I inform your Majesty that finding no remedy for the thefts of rigging, on account of the many foreign ships that arrive here, I have had a black thread put in the rigging belonging to your Majesty, so that it can be recognized and this loss will be obviated.

I found the natives of these islands exhausted by the harsh repartimiento which obtained of personal services, from which the rich and powerful chiefs were exempted, and the wretched people so burdened that they had not enough with four pesos a year for each Indian, and now they have it with four reals.

The affairs of the province of Cagaian are in a better state, for with the entry made by the two companies which I sent, more than a thousand of the rebels were reduced, with a considerable quantity of silver recovered which they had taken from the churches; and, under a general pardon, more of them are continually becoming peaceful.

For the punishment of the Camucones, a people who are accustomed to rob these coasts in vessels so light that they rely upon these alone, I sent a captain who has had experience in their islands (which extend from Paragua to Borney), with fifty-five Spaniards and more than six hundred Indians. They found none of the people, as they had all retired from that kingdom to the island of Mindanao and the coast of Caraga. An entry was made, whereby more than five thousand tributarios were reduced to peace. Here in the neighborhood of Manila a great many Negrillos from the mountains have been reduced and settled, who used to inflict great injury on the neighboring villages.

Of the quarters which I informed you were being built for the infantry, three are finished, the best which I have seen, where about three hundred men can be lodged. I believe that the governor will continue so beneficial a work. I have brought all the troops inside the city, whereby it and its suburbs have been in peace, without a wounded man having been under care for eight months, where so many used to be killed every month.

The city had decided to build a stone bridge over the main river. It is begun, and, if it is finished, it will much increase the value of property, and be of the highest benefit to the community and to the persons who hold property on the other bank.

The ship which I despatched to Japon for military supplies arrived at Nanguaciqui, where they took precautionary measures until the emperor was informed. This resulted in their being notified a few days later that they must return without trading at all, and make it known that no vessel should go from these islands under pain of death, on account of the religious which they conveyed from here; accordingly, it is impossible to enter that country alive. The ship returned, and this year goes as the admiral's ship to Nueva Espana, of which the new governor will inform you.



Page 43

In the provincial chapter of the Augustinians held on the first of May I was present, at their instance; for they were divided into two parties by their usual passion. They were presided over by the most serious friar of their order, but the bold acts of the youthful friars at every juncture violated the rules of obedience, which they certainly are subverting. I proceeded with the utmost moderation, sometimes denying the aid which was asked from me, and restraining them by threats that I would appoint secular ecclesiastics to the missions. They were finally quieted by this, for otherwise the province would have been divided, as they threatened. Not a little blame is due to the fiscal, who attempted by means of his negotiations to make himself master even of these elections.

I have received advices from Macan by six galleotas, which have arrived with goods; they are demanding that a check be given to the progress that the enemy are making in their fort on the island of Hermosa. [18] They say that it is finished, and made of stone, sand-banks, and brick, having six bastions and at the edge of the water a platform with six cannon. The bay is eight leguas around, and an anchoring-place is on the north side. The fresh water is below a redoubt two leguas from the fort. The bar is thirteen feet under water with reefs, so the large ships remain outside. There is much to be gained in all kinds of trade with the natives, in purchases of deer-hides and merchandise for Japon. This port is in twenty-two degrees. Their object in fortifying it now was that this place commanded the passage of the ships from Chincheo to this city. They have accomplished their end through the presents which they have given to the mandarins, and the threats to rob them, as hitherto—namely, to secure the silks and carry them to Japon and Holland, as they are now doing, and take them away from this country, in this way ruining it, for there is nothing of importance except this commerce. This loss is clearly shown, for in fifty ships which have arrived at these islands, there were not forty picos of silk brought, while the enemy had nine hundred, excluding the woven goods; and, if it were not for what has come from Macan, the ships [for Nueva Espana] would have nothing to carry.

This trade of the Portuguese is most injurious, not only on account of their unfriendly attitude, but because they have raised the prices of goods, securing the profit thereon, and draining the wealth of the citizens here. Considering this, then, and what your Majesty has ordered regarding the pacification of the Hermosa Islands (which my predecessor so desired), after I had used all possible diligence, as in a matter of so great importance, and found that the security and rehabilitation of these islands depended upon having a port to windward from that of the enemy—as this city besought me to do, since that was its only refuge—I made ready in all secrecy, and at so little expense that, although I found the treasury



Page 44

embarrassed with a debt of three thousand pesos, it remained with less than twenty-five thousand of debt, which was borrowed from citizens. I despatched from here Sargento-mayor Antonio Carreno de Valdes, with all the necessary supplies and two galleys. He is a person remarkably fit for this purpose, and an excellent servant of your Majesty. He left Cagaian on the fifth of May and arrived on the eleventh at the place where his instructions directed, which is at the head of the island, at twenty-five degrees north. He explored the bottom and anchored with all his fleet in the best port imaginable, a remarkable favor from heaven, if those of Japon are closed to him [*MS. holed*]. It is distant from the mainland of China eighteen leguas, and has a depth at the entrance of eighteen brazas, and a capacity of five hundred ships. The site if the fortification is naturally very strong, all of which appears by his plan which accompanies this. He found a village of fifteen hundred houses built of fragrant woods, with a people like [*MS. defective*] somewhat lighter in color and differing in language [19] [*MS. holed*] thanks be to God. The fortification was under way and in the despatch[-boat] which he sent me with the information there were a hundred and twenty picos of iron pikes and two hundred and thirteen arrobas of sulphur, which is brought from Castilla for the powder. They have supplies for a year; and the enterprise is already proving advantageous. It is most expedient that this should be furthered, on account of the great advantages which will result from this post being in the vicinity of China; in that locality there are excellent water, Castilian fruits, and partridges, although these have not red beaks. Since some evil-intentioned person has tried to make the governor think, as he is new in the knowledge of this country, that this will commence a new war, I shall tell him what I think, leaving to time the results. Let it not appear that I am praising my own cares, because I seek no other reward for my services except that of rendering them to so great a king.

In the first place, the trade of the enemy is established and that from this country has stopped; but, as this is without the knowledge of the king of China, he will, as soon as his attention is called to it, take rigorous measures to prevent the Dutch trade. By the measures which I have set on foot, this object could be secured by the galley, which could patrol the coast. For fifty years they [*i.e.*, the Chinese] have had proved the steadiness of our trade and the abundance of our silver, and they have desired nothing further than to see us with a post where they can seek us without danger, as they will do at present; for in so short a distance, and with so strong currents [*in the sea*] the enemy cannot disturb our post—from which will result the dismantling of his fort, for he will be outside the line of traffic and on the coast opposite. On the other hand the

Page 45

Japanese, who cannot dispense with silks, must come for them to our port, bringing us silver. We are the masters of all their traffic as far as Sian, Cochinchina, and Camboja, as they have to pass through this strait; and accordingly our friendship will be valued, and a door will be opened for the conversion [of the heathen], which is the principal aim of your Majesty. [*In the margin*: “Let this clause and the one which follows it be read word for word.”]

Although there have been persons who thought an armed fleet necessary to bring over the goods from the island to this city, this doubt is unfounded, because that route can be navigated during nine months in the year among the islands and currents, without any port on the eastern side. During the northern monsoons it is impossible for a vessel to hold its own in that locality while they blow, for they are following winds for us; it is therefore certain that the enemy will not be able to trouble us. Even in case the fleet were necessary, it remains in port rotting, and the men are causing the same expense; and it would be better for it to go for goods that are sure and bought at very low prices, the duties and freight charges on which would equal the expense of going out to drive the enemy from the coast after he has robbed it, without profit to your Majesty, or the citizens here, or those in Nueva Espana. It is not a bad port where ships from Castilla may put in, being as safe as is that of Santissima Trinidad. [20] The fleets which have gone out from here in my time have not dared, for lack of such a port, to follow the enemy or to leave the coast, for they could not make it again if they entered the vendavals; this was one of the excuses for the last retreat which Don Geronimo de Silva made. In his lawsuit and that of the commanders of the “San Yldefonso” and “San Rimundo,” the governor found for an abandonment of proceedings, pronouncing sentence, I assure your Majesty, without favor or prejudice. The master-of-camp died on the same day when my successor arrived here; and, a few days before, Factor Diego de Castro Lison, a good servant I appointed in his place in the interim Captain Christoval de Mercado—a person who is so fit for the position that I sought him out; and who has served almost all the offices of justice which exist in the islands, whereby he has gained knowledge of the commodities that the provinces can furnish. He has left these with a good, clean reputation, and personally appears to be well qualified. I shall appreciate it if your Majesty will confirm this. I will say the same of the warder, Pedro Sotelo de Morales, appointed to Fort Santiago without salary, as your Majesty has commanded, in place of Lucas de Bergara, deceased.

Considering the great importance of effective collection for the exchequer of your Majesty, and the auditing of the accounts that are in arrears, I have accomplished as much as I could this year, and they have been audited from the year 18 to that of 23.



Page 46

For the unburdening of my conscience I will, now that my presidency is over, tell your Majesty incidentally what I think of the officers of this Audiencia, whose inspection is awaited; and if, as is desirable, your Majesty send it, that will tell you better. Don Alvaro de Lugo y Messa is an upright judge, and zealous in the service of your Majesty. Geronimo de Legaspi does what his two sons wish, whom, on account of their reckless lives, the governors cannot employ, and thus are unable to satisfy their father, who is not contented except with favors. Don Juan de Valderrama does as his wife says; and Don Matias Flores, although a young man, is less harmful; when he is so, it is owing to his passions or affections. He makes all the profit he can from the office, and on the whole is not acceptable to the community, which is always disturbed by him. I consider his office incompatible with that of protector; but, although your Majesty had issued a decree directing that this should not be, they annulled it. I do not wish to annoy your Majesty any further, for there are persons who will write this from a sense of duty; and I refer, for information regarding my earnest desires for the service of your Majesty, to what all classes of people will write. Since coming to serve you in these islands I have undergone so many expenses that I am poor and in debt as president. I beg your Majesty to remember me by giving me the favor of the presidency of Panama, or the future succession to it [*MS. holed*] realm or governorship of Guatemala, whichever may first be vacant; for I have not property enough remaining to go and claim it in your court.

I likewise requested your Majesty last year not to allow my wife, since she is such, and cannot remain here as a private citizen, to lose the encomiendas which she inherited from her father and grandfather, who served so long in these islands; and that you would command a decree to be despatched so that she might enjoy them wherever you might choose that she and her daughter should live, as the latter is the last heir; and this I beg, for the reasons which I have mentioned to your Majesty.

At the proper time, I despatched to Sian a private ship, in order to avoid the cost of carrying the troops, goods, and supplies which remain there by the death of Don Fernando de Silva. [21] Everything went well. I also sent a father of the Society, a man of great experience, to get under way the collection from all that comes from Yndia and other parts. Don Juan Nino will inform your Majesty of it. May our Lord protect your royal person according to the needs of Christendom. Manila, July 30, 626.

Don Fernando de Silva

[*On the back of this letter:* "The original descriptions of the island Hermosa and the relation concerning all those localities, are in the possession of Senor Don Andres de Rozas."]

LETTER FROM THE SISTERS OF ST. CLARE TO FELIPE IV



Page 47

Jesus, Mary

May all empires and kingdoms be made subject to your royal Majesty. We were sent here by the great king, Don Felipe, our sovereign (may he rest in peace), by his royal decree and favor he ordering the governor and royal Audiencia to receive us under his royal protection as nuns of the first rule of St. Clare, [22] so that the daughters of the conquistadors who do not have the means for marriage may be aided; and [it was ordered] that, when the provincial of our order should be present they should make regulations according to our rule and profession—his royal Majesty ordering the above with the earnestness that is made evident in his decree. We have found in this kingdom so friendly a disposition and so great abundance of what is necessary (with which we are supplied in the city), that although at present we number only thirty-three sisters, seventy could be supported on the alms that are bestowed upon us every week in small contributions—besides those given in quantity by private persons and bequeathed to us in wills; and those from women who are admitted to the order, who have wealth for this purpose.

Our rule declares that we may not solicit the property of those who enter to become nuns, and we are not to be careful of aught else than their virtues; but that if any one of these wishes to give some alms of her own freewill, we may receive it, as from any other person. Consequently, having observed faithfully this rule—I mean, in not desiring or striving for any more than the said benefit (and we exercise great care in this)—our Lord moves hearts, so that one woman alone has given us fourteen thousand pesos. With that the work on the convent is progressing. Other women who are about to make profession say that they will give the same amount that they would give their husbands if they married; and that, since God is their spouse, they wish to give it to Him so that a convent capable of sustaining many nuns may be built, so that they may serve his Majesty. Some have as their dowry only the spiritual wealth that the rule requires. Consequently, there are liable to be many orphan girls who serve God, daughters and granddaughters of conquistadors, who are calling aloud, and they refuse to allow them to enter. It is a pity to see so pious desires disappointed. I petition your Majesty to send me a royal decree that no limit shall be set to the number of nuns that the convent may contain. The rule does not limit the number, nor does any other convent throughout all these kingdoms. The city is very rich, and food so cheap that fourteen libras of beef cost one real; another real buys eight libras of fish; six libras of sugar, one real; and fowls, salt pork, and all other things in the same proportion; of salt alone, they have given us, on this last arrival of the ships, three hundred and seventy baras [i.e., bahars]; also a goodly supply of wine for the mass; and linen, which is very cheap.



Page 48

Consequently we, these least important vassals of your Majesty, do not need human aid, but the divine. That aid we have entreated from the royal favor, so that no restriction be laid on the nuns that the convent shall contain. It is a great pity to see how they hinder the souls who serve God in so great perfection as those women who are here, the natives of these kingdoms. I consider beyond any doubt that they will be most devoted servants of God, who works marvels in all those whom He shrives, and all set themselves to observe the warnings of the gospel. An infinite number of little girls and older orphans come weeping, with their widowed mothers, begging us for the love of God to give them the habit. Since the king, our sovereign, sent them so great a spiritual and temporal consolation, and since their parents gained it for them by conquering this country at the cost of their own lives, we all are so bounden. Beseeching our Lord to prosper your royal Majesty, spiritually and temporally, with infinite increase; and may He subject to the royal power of your royal Majesty all empires and kingdoms that He has created for the greater honor, glory, and increase of the faithful, and the exaltation of the holy Catholic faith. Manila, July 31. Given in this convent of La Concepcion of the discalced nuns of St. Clare, in the year 1626.

The most humble vassals of your royal and sacred Majesty,

Jeronima de la Asunsion, [23]

abbess, and her sisters,

Ana de Christo Bicaria Leonor [de] San Francisco Leonor de Sant Buena Bentura Lueysa de Jesus Magdalena de Christo Juana de San Antonio Maria de los Angeles Maria Magdalena Ana de Jesus Ana de Christo Bicaria

PETITION FOR AID TO THE SEMINARY OF SAN JUAN DE LETRAN

Sire:

Brother Juan Geronimo Guerrero, [24] who has charge of the seminary of Sant Juan de Letran for orphan boys in the city of Manila, declares that in consideration of the general welfare of the said children, and their education and teaching, your Majesty was pleased to order Don Fernando de Silva, governor of those islands, by your royal decree of July 16, 623, to aid the said seminary with some taxes, so that the boys in it might be reared and supported. But, as no taxes were found, the said royal decree has had no effect; and to this day not more than the small sum of three hundred pesos has been assigned to the seminary—an amount so small that it does not suffice to provide shoes for the boys who are now there. The number there is daily increasing, and the expenses incurred are very considerable and the alms but little. With what they have they cannot be supported. In order that so pious a work may continue, and so that

those orphan boys may be suitably assisted with the necessaries of life, and not be ruined:



Page 49

He petitions your Majesty that, favoring by your sovereign mercy a work so greatly to the service of our Lord, you will be pleased to order that some encomienda of Indians, or a pension from those that shall be allotted, may be set aside for the said seminary—or in any other manner which your Majesty pleases, and for the period that your royal will deems best. [I ask this] because from it will follow considerable profit for your royal service; for the boys reared there incline to become soldiers, and up to the present time forty of them have gone out to serve your Majesty in that employ, while five have become friars, and twelve are studying. And, in order that they may learn the art of navigation, will your Majesty be pleased to command an examined pilot to come to the said seminary to teach it to them. Will your Majesty also be pleased to order that, inasmuch as there are many children of Spaniards among the Indian women of these islands, conceived by the latter, these children may be taken from them and brought to be reared in the said seminary, so that they may not become idolaters like the Indian women, when they are grown. Our Lord will be served by that, and will receive especial blessing and favor.

[*Endorsed*: “The seminary of Sant Juan de Letran for orphan boys in the city of Manila.”]

[*Instructions*: “Senor Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras: Let a decree be issued for them that, in the same manner as the other three hundred pesos, I set aside for them, from the taxes that I shall possess there, the further sum of three hundred ducados. As for the other things that he requests, refer them to the governor, so that he may take what measures are advisable in everything, in order that the service of God our Lord and of his Majesty may be attended to. November 18.”]

[*In the margin*: “In regard to what is asked in this section, his Majesty issued a decree, that the governor of Philipinas shall assign the said seminary three hundred ducados in taxes that do not belong to the treasury, as another three hundred pesos were assigned. All the other things requested are referred to the governor, so that he may provide everything advisable, in order that they may attend to the service of God and that of his Majesty.”]

Sire:

Since the beginning of the so firm foundation of this seminary of San Juan de Letran, I have made known to your Majesty by faithful relations the great fruit obtained for God our Lord and for the service of your Majesty, in protecting and sheltering in the seminary so many orphan boys, the sons of old Spanish soldiers, who [without it] would evidently be ruined for lack of instruction and good morals. So good results have been achieved in this, as experience has shown by those who have left this seminary—forty for the service of your Majesty, to serve as soldiers, six others as religious, and six who serve in this cathedral church as acolytes. There are now in



Page 50

the seminary more than fifty boys. Your Majesty, having examined the despatches, was pleased to send me a royal decree, ordering the governors of these islands to protect and favor this seminary with incomes. In these islands revenues are so few, that Governor Don Fernando de Silva assigned three hundred pesos in chattels—namely, certain small shops, which are suppressed today and opened to-morrow. In order that this enterprise may go on increasing for the service of God and of your Majesty, will you order that an encomienda be given to us. With it and my feeble efforts we could support ourselves, and so great a work as this is would not fail.

I beseech your Majesty, for the love of God, that when my life is over, [the Confraternity of] La Misericordia may take charge of the seminary, with the brothers of the third order; and that a boy who has been very long in this college may remain to shelter them, so that this work, that is so acceptable to God our Lord, may continue to increase and not to diminish. May God preserve your Majesty for many years, as Christendom desires and as is necessary. Manila, August first, one thousand six hundred and twenty-six.

Your Majesty's humble vassal,

Brother Juan Geronimo Guerrero

[*Instructions*: "Let the governor be again charged to observe what has been ordered him. May 11, 628."]

ROYAL DECREES

Ordering the correction of abuses by the Augustinians

The King. To Don Juan Nino de Tavora, member of my Council of War, my governor and captain-general of the Philipinas Islands, and president of the royal Audiencia therein: In a letter written to me by Don Fernando de Silva, in whose charge that government was *ad interim*, dated August four of the past year one thousand six hundred and twenty-five, he declares that there is not so great need anywhere else as in those islands for the governors to have authority to remove or promote religious teachers because of their unbridled or steady lives; and that the religious have come to lose respect, by their deeds, for the alcaldes-mayor, and pay no attention to the royal jurisdiction and patronage—especially the Augustinians who are more extravagant than the others. They are entirely masters of the wills of the Indians, and give out that in them consists the quietness or disobedience of the Indians. Inasmuch as the alcalde-mayor of Bayaban tried to moderate the excesses that were being committed, the religious entered his house, attacked him, and beat him. Another alcalde-mayor, who resides in Bulacan, having arrested two Indian seamen of my royal fleet so that they



should go to serve in their places, the religious there took them from him; and every day more dangerous incidents are occurring, in which they need some intervention. It would therefore be advisable to send them the decree that was issued in the former year of six hundred and twenty-four for



Page 51

Nueva Espana, ordering that the heads of the religious, especially he of St. Augustine, order the religious to restrain themselves. Notwithstanding that the said decree has been sent already to those islands, and now goes in duplicate, I order you to summon the provincial of the Augustinians and tell him that it is greatly advisable to punish that religious; and that he shall accordingly do so. You are hereby advised that under no consideration shall a mission be granted to those religious who shall be guilty of such offenses, and you shall advise me of what you shall do. Madrid, June nineteen, one thousand six hundred and twenty-six.

I The King

Countersigned by Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras, and signed by the members of the Council.

[*Endorsed*: “To the governor of Philipinas, ordering him to summon the provincial of the Augustinians, and command him to punish a certain religious, a missionary, for the excess of which he has been guilty; and that he see that those religious who should be guilty be not admitted to a mission.”]

Concerning the courts of the alcaldes-in-ordinary

The King: To the president and auditors of my Audiencia of the city of Manila in the Filipinas Islands. Martin Castano, procurator-general of the islands, has made me a report, stating that the auctions of what is sold and leased from my royal estate, at which one auditor and the fiscal of that Audiencia are present, are held by the royal officials in the cabildo houses of the said city, where the alcaldes-in-ordinary hold their court to administer justice; and that, although the hall where the aforesaid officials hold the said auctions is distinct and separate from that of the alcaldes, you have now lately ordered that, when the said auctions are to be held, if the said alcaldes should be present in the said hall, they suspend court, although it is necessary for them to conduct their hearings at the accustomed hours. He has petitioned me that, since the court of the said alcaldes does not disturb or hinder the auctions, but rather is the cause of more people resorting thither, I be pleased to order you not to make any innovation in the aforesaid practice. The matter having been examined in my royal Council of the Indias, I have considered it expedient, and accordingly I order you, to allow the said alcaldes-in-ordinary to call their courts in the said cabildo houses where they hold their court, at the usual hours, even though the said auctions happen to be held even at the same time. Madrid, June 19, 1626.

I The King By order of the king our sovereign: *Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras*

Regarding the hospitals



Page 52

The King. To Don Juan Nino de Tabora, knight of the habit of Calatrava, member of my Council of War, my governor and captain-general of the Philipinas Islands, and president of my royal Audiencia therein: In a letter written to me by that city on August 13, of the former year 1624, it mentions that in the hospitals there the sick endure great hardships, and that the hospitals are not administered with the care that is advisable, which causes many to die (and those chiefly soldiers); and that it would be very advisable for the brothers of [St.] John of God to take charge of their administration and service. Having been examined by my Council of the Indias, I order you, as it is a pious matter and one suitable for your office, on your part to have all care so that the poor have the best accommodation possible, and be aided, as I expect from you; for besides fulfilling your obligations in this you will serve me. Madrid, October 16, 1626.

I The King By order of the king our sovereign: *Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras*

MILITARY AFFAIRS OF THE ISLANDS

Most authentic relation, in which is narrated the present condition of the wars against the Dutch in the Filipinas and the kingdoms of Japon; and the famous deeds of Don Fernando de Silva, sargento-mayor, together with the great victories of the Spaniards, who destroyed four hundred Dutchmen. The year 1626.

I shall relate what things are new in these remote districts. I shall give a brief narrative both of the island of Mindanao, whose conquest is being made at present, and of Don Fernando de Silva, captain and commander of the soldiers, who went to China. The island of Mindanao is one of the largest that are seen in this archipelago. It has quantities of cinnamon, and is very rich, through the trade that they carry on with all the nations and with these islands. Its natives are given over to the vile worship of Mahoma to a degree not reached by the Moors [i.e., those of Spain] themselves. That worship holds them so tightly in its abominations that it rears them with extreme hatred toward Christians, both Spaniards and Indians. The disposition of the people is vile but bold, and they are given to insults and robbery. They make raids through the islands that are instructed by the Society of Jesus, plundering, robbing, and capturing many. But having recognized the valor of the Spaniards on various occasions when the latter have scattered and destroyed their fleets of small vessels, they recently made treaties of peace, and sent ambassadors to Manila to the governor with captives and presents—requesting an alliance, and soldiers, in order that these make a settlement in their lands, and aid them against others who are their enemies, inhabitants of the same island, with whom they wage civil war. They were well received by the governor, and given a valiant captain with five hundred soldiers; and the father



Page 53

provincial of the Society of Jesus gave two fathers from his residence, to instruct them. All assembled at the town of Arevalo, where the chief commandant of these provinces lives, one Juan Claudio de Verastigui, who was ordered to set out immediately for Mindanao with his fleet, whither he himself is going in person with his ships. The alcalde-mayor of this city [25] is going to aid with fifty other soldiers for the said purpose. A good result is hoped from it, and that either by friendship or by force they will get a piece of artillery and some ammunition from the Mindanaos that they took one year ago from the governor. The latter ordered Don Juan Claudio not to return without it.

The occasion for that piece belonging to his Majesty remaining in Mindanao was that Cachil Coralat, the natural lord of Mindanao, seeing himself pressed by a tyrant in his kingdom, and seeing himself conquered in a battle that they fought with him, hastened to this city of Zebu to ask the Spaniards for help, sending one of his captains for it. The latter was well entertained, and the piece was given to him among other presents, twelve Spaniards and some ammunition being also furnished with it. After the twelve Spaniards had been there for some time, they were withdrawn, some say through fault of the Mindanaos, and others that of the Spaniards. Consequently, as they left in haste, the piece of artillery remained in Coralat's possession. At this time, the Mindanaos from Manila having reached Octong, the piece was requested from them in his Majesty's name, or satisfaction for it. The Spaniards took from them some gold and equivalent articles in exchange, and tried to capture some of them by means of an alferéz, adjutant, and soldiers. The Mindanaos, however, put themselves on the defensive so courageously, and with so great wrath (or rather barbarity), that their chief, one Salin—in the midst of the Spanish force and arms, and in front of a fort that his Majesty has there—drawing a dagger, plunged it into the adjutant through his groin and left him stretched out. The officer next to the alferéz—who was a fine soldier, and, like the other, was on the inner guard in the Sanglely ship on which they had come—defended himself as well as he could, but was finally killed by a stroke of a campilan (a Mindanao weapon); and they took away his sword and dagger. Seeing our soldiers, who were in their guardship unprepared, the Mindanaos threw them overboard, and, cutting the cable, made off with the ship. However, when that was seen by our men, they quickly prepared boats and pursued them with a goodly number of soldiers and killed them with arquebus-shots. Salin, wounded in the breast, fell into the water, but did not loose his hold on his campilan. There, while struggling with the waves, he saw a Spaniard who had fallen overboard in the fray, hanging on to a rope from a pirogue, who, as he could not swim, was being carried along, thus held fast. Salin made for him, and, wounded as he was, gave him in his fury so severe a blow with his campilan that he split the Spaniard's head, from which blow he died. Of the Spaniards, three men were killed; and, of the Mindanaos, three were wounded and six killed, besides two wounded who were taken prisoners.



Page 54

At this time, Don Fernando de Silva, who came as sargento-mayor of the present governor, [26] has always given proofs of so great [ability as] a captain that he was sent as commander of two hundred Spaniards who went to aid the city of Macam, which the Portuguese have in China. A Dutch fleet arrived at the city of Macam on this occasion and besieged it, landing four hundred men. But the inhabitants of Macam issued forth in their orderly array and concert, and attacked the Dutch so courageously that they destroyed all the four hundred in their camp. Then the Portuguese, ascertaining that the Dutch were gathering force once more to avenge that injury, begged for aid from the governor of Manila. On that so honorable occasion Captain Don Fernando de Silva went out with his two hundred chosen Spaniards. There were very welcome to the Portuguese, and he was always highly esteemed by them because of his gracious manner. The Portuguese delivered to him a ship laden with merchandise, the profits to be shared by all. He took it to the kingdom of Siam and ascended the river for thirty leguas, unladed his goods, and disposed of them as well as possible, for they were injured by the water. The Japanese, many of whom live there, tried, in their greed, to attack the Spaniards; but Don Fernando de Silva understood them, and resisted them with his infantry. The Dutch, who have their factory there, notified others near there to come to their aid, in order to attack the ship with its three hundred persons, which is supplied with arms and force sufficiently abundant for its defense. Some evil outcome is feared, for the ship cannot leave the bar without unlading its goods.

The persecution in Japon is even more bloody, for they returned his present to the ambassador from Macan, and ordered him to return home. A governor was sent down with orders to kill the Christians and the captive religious whom he should find. In short, the order has gone forth to suppress trade with Macan and Filipinas, and that no ships be received from, or leave Japon for, these regions.

It has been learned by way of Macan that the Chinese seized from the Dutch their almiranta.

With the severe persecution of Japon, we are advised that four hundred Catholics have been slain for the faith. While two cavaliers were present at the martyrdom *irruit spiritus Domini*, [27] and they went forth in public, crying out: "Surely this is a good faith that teaches so lofty things. Salvation cometh only by it, as is proven by so many dying in order not to abandon it." Thus crying out and acting, they went running into the fire, where they were burned, leaving the bystanders amazed, and all the world marveling at so wonderful an example.

It is rumored that beyond doubt the emperor of Japon will order Nangazaqui to be razed, and all the Europeans driven out and exiled—commanding that they depart with their children and wives; but that, if the wives are Japanese, they as well as their daughters must be given up, and the sons be taken away.



Page 55

Laus Deo

Printed with permission of Don Luys Remirez de Arellano, deputy-mayor of Sevilla.

Printed in Sevilla by Juan de Cabrera, opposite the post-office. The year 1626.

DOCUMENTS OF 1627

Importance of the Philippines. Martin Castano; [undated; 1627?]. Relation of 1626. [Unsigned and undated; ca. 1627]. Letter to Tavora. Felipe IV; September 3. Laws regarding the Sangleys. [From *Recopilacion de leyes de las Indias*]; 1594-1627. Decrees regarding the religious. Felipe IV; May-November. Decrees regarding the Chinese. Felipe IV; September 10 and November 19. Inadvisability of a Spanish post on the island of Formosa. Juan Cevicos; December 20.

Sources: The first, fifth, and seventh of these documents are obtained from MSS. in the Archivo general de Indias, Sevilla; the second, from the Ventura del Arco MSS. (Ayer library), vol. i, pp. 523-545; the third and sixth, from the Archivo Historico Nacional, Madrid; the fourth, from *Recopilacion de leyes de las Indias*, lib. vi, tit. xviii.

Translations: These are all made by James A. Robertson, except the third, by Arthur B. Myrick.

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE PHILIPPINES

Sire:

I, Martin Castano, procurator-general of the Filipinas, declare that—having examined and carefully considered, in the course of so long a period as I have spent here, the region of these islands, their great importance, and the little energy displayed in coming to their help while the enemies from Olanda are exerting themselves so strenuously to gain possession of them—I am convinced that such inaction can proceed only from a failure to estimate that country at its proper value, imagining it to be of less importance than it is, since it is regarded as being so far away [from Espana]. But those islands are the most important part of your Majesty's dominion; and from delay it results that the enemy is continually gaining, and your Majesty losing, while recovery becomes more difficult. If they should be lost, and the country given up to the natives, it would be, even if the Hollanders had not gone thither, a loss of the magnitude which will be made evident by this paper; but if your Majesty lose them, and your greatest enemy gain them, the loss will be beyond all exaggeration. Therefore, I have desired to advance four important considerations regarding those islands: namely, the extension of the faith, and the increase of your Majesty's dominion, glory, and riches. And in case of any

doubt as to the truth of my assertions, I will prove them by trustworthy witnesses and authentic papers, to your entire satisfaction.



Page 56

As to the increase of the faith, it is quite well known that no other gate in all the world has been opened through which so many souls may come into the knowledge of it as in the Filipinas; for they are situated amid so vast kingdoms, so densely inhabited, so ready to be christianized, as has been proved in China and Japon. And had not the Hollanders gained the friendship of the Japanese, the greater part of that kingdom would have been converted, as things were going; for at Nangasaqui, the port of entry for those going from the Filipinas, there were so many Christians that they formed processions for the discipline during Holy Week, just as in Espana. But since the entrance of the Hollanders there, Christianity has been so rooted out that there is not one declared Christian, because of the severe punishments inflicted at the Dutch instigation. It is a great misfortune that these heretics have managed to gain the friendship of the emperor of Japon, by promising him Chinese silks—depending on those that they expect to steal from the Chinese and the citizens of Manila. It is a misfortune that at the same time your Majesty has not preserved your friendship with them, as we are in so much better a position to let them have silks in trade, which are the things that they want. This is of so great importance, that it would be advisable to send an embassy to the emperor, to inform him that those heretics are rebellious vassals of your Majesty; and that it is not right that any king should receive those who have revolted from your obedience. For the Hollanders provide themselves with all necessary munitions of war and food supplies there, as that kingdom is so well furnished with everything; while your Majesty's vassals are in want of those things, although they are so near at hand. One other very great loss is suffered, namely, that, since the Hollanders live in Japon as if in their own land, well supplied with all necessities, and so near Manila, they enter the bay of that city with much greater facility, and carry away as plunder all the merchandise from China and other countries. They remain there most of the year, because they have a safer retreat, when the weather compels them to retire. Returning to the increase of the faith, besides that it was extending itself in the neighboring kingdoms, years ago I was informed, by the religious who instructed those fields of Christendom, of the number of Christians that were vassals of your Majesty, reckoned by congregations; and the number exceeded six hundred thousand. Consider, then, your Majesty, what should be done to preserve and cultivate that new plant, and not allow it to be lost, and heresy to be substituted for it.



Page 57

As to the increase of your Majesty's dominion, there is no doubt that while you are master and lord of the Filipinas, your crown encircles and embraces all the world; for today your kingdom stretches on the eastern side from Portuguese India to Malaca, and between the point of the mainland of Malaca and the island of Samatra is the strait of Sincapura by which one enters the South Sea and goes to the above-named places and the Filipinas, while on the western side the coasts of Piru and Nuevaespana border on the South Sea, whence one goes likewise to the Filipinas. Thus it is proved that with those islands your Majesty's crown encircles and embraces the whole world—a greatness which furnishes a reason for great energy. Further, if the enemy succeeds in getting possession of the Filipinas, toward which end he is putting forth so great effort, not only will this richest fragment of your Majesty's crown be lost, but the enemy will make himself master of Portuguese India immediately; and then by way of the South Sea, he will disturb Piru and Nuevaespana, so that they can be of no profit to your Majesty. And if the enemy perceives himself to be so powerful, he will even dare to undertake other great enterprises.

As to reputation, one word is sufficient. All the kings and nations of the world are watching to see who comes out ahead in this undertaking—your Majesty or the rebels of Olanda.

As to wealth, to see the efforts that the Hollanders are making for it, having experienced it—for nothing but wealth comes to them—might well answer as sufficient proof. But yet I notify your Majesty of three extremely great sources of wealth in the Filipinas: first, the wonderfully rich gold mines, of which I have given accounts separately, so that I shall not repeat them now; second, the cloves of the Malucos, which amount to three and one-half millions per year. Of this likewise I have given detailed reports. It is the sole inducement of the Hollanders to go there, and therefore they have exerted great care and effort to gain possession, as they have done, of the islands where it is grown, so that they enjoy nearly all of it. The third is the trade from China to Japon, and from Japon to China, in which—as those two kingdoms bear so mortal a hatred to one another that under no considerations can they trade with one another, and China has so much silk that is wanted in Japon, and Japon so much silver, so desired by the Chinese—the inhabitants of the Filipinas, which lie between both kingdoms, traffic in these articles with very great profit. The Hollanders desire that traffic exceedingly; and, as they have acquired the trade of Japon, so they will be able to acquire that of China, although the Chinese are hostile to them, because of the robberies that the Hollanders have committed on them. But, for this very reason it might even be feared that, seeing the Hollanders so powerful and superior on the sea, and that they steal their property from them, without



Page 58

leaving them any for their own trading, and your Majesty's forces are so weak that they cannot defend them, they will abandon us and become friendly with the Hollanders, just as those who were formerly your Majesty's vassals are doing. For all those barbarous nations, inasmuch as neither religion, kinship, nor friendship binds them, are ever on the lookout to make friends with him who is most powerful. Admitting all the foregoing, I beseech your Majesty not to permit further delay in coming to the aid of this so important matter; for the enemy is so needfully profiting by the time that is being lost here.

[*Endorsed in writing*: "In regard to the importance of the Filipinas."]

RELATION OF 1626

Relation of the condition of the Filipinas Islands and other regions surrounding, in the year 1626.

Although I have been interrupted for several years in doing this, because of occupations that have allowed me no time for it, and have neglected to give advice of the condition of these islands, at present I have not, although my occupations are not fewer than in the past, attempted to shirk my duty in reporting what has happened this year in these regions, but briefly and concisely.

Commencing with the Malucas Islands, they are at present in the best condition that they have experienced, from our standpoint; for the Dutch enemy are spent, inasmuch as no succor has been sent to them from Holanda for many years—it appearing that the wars which they have had there must have hindered them. Consequently, it has been recognized that, when the war ceases, their ships will come here in multitudes; and we shall enjoy war, and Flandes peace. The king of Tidore, who was very aged, and was always our friend, died this year. One of his sons took his place, and continues the same friendship [with us]. The Ternatans, who have always been friends of the Dutch and very hostile to us, made peace with us. That has had a very good result for us, for we receive more damage from them than from the Dutch themselves. There have been in this city since the time when the strongholds of the Malucas were taken—which was twenty years ago, during the term of Governor Don Pedro de Acuna—certain cachils, who are chiefs among them, and the same king of Ternate, a great Moro. The governor sent one of the cachils to Maluco to talk and confer with his people, especially with Cachil Leali. The latter had, as it were, usurped the kingdom of Ternate—and, as we understand, prevented his fellow-countrymen from receiving the king whom we hold captive here, even if he should return—and continued the war against us. The matter turned out well, and now the said cachil who went from here is returning, in the capacity of ambassador of his people, petitioning that their king be sent to them, whom they



promise to receive as such, and to make and unmake for us. I do not know what Governor Don Juan Nino de Tabora will do. What I know is, that the Dutch do not like any of these agreements and friendships that we are making with the Ternatans; but since they are at present fallen, and can do no more, they endure it patiently.



Page 59

The Dutch have no fleets in the Malucas, while there are scarcely two hundred men in their forts in their islands of Terrenate, Machien, and Motiel (five or six in number); and many of these are so discontented, because of the hardships and misery which they suffer, that some six or eight have come to our camp this year, and many more would have come if there were a place for them, or if opportunity for it had offered. That was a fine opportunity to attack them with our fleet, which was already prepared in the port of Cavite. It is not certainly known where it is going, but we suspect that it is going to attack the fort of the Dutch in the island of Hermosa. It is also thought that the following year will not pass without the fleet attacking them. If the wars in Flandes continue, and help does not come to the Dutch, we may hope for a very fine outcome.

The Camucones (who are certain robbers who infest these seas, pillaging, and are, moreover, a vile people, to whom we have paid but little attention) came with their fleet of small vessels in the past year of 1625, and at dawn one morning in October attacked a village, where the archbishop of Manila was visiting the cura. He as well as his followers had great trouble in escaping, all without clothes or nearly so. They captured all his wardrobe and his pontifical robes, among which he had some very rich garments.

The enemy then attacked a boat in which there was a father of our Society, who was returning to his house and residence, which is located on the island of Marinduque, after having preached at some missions of Franciscan friars who had invited him for that purpose. They spied the enemy suddenly, in a place where it was impossible to escape, and it was necessary for them to fight. Father Juan de las Missas (such was the name of the father) commenced to encourage the Indians with a crucifix to make them fight. But it happened that a shot from a verso, fired by the enemy at the first encounter, struck the father. The enemy immediately entered the boat even while the father was yet alive and took his skull from his head to use as a drinking cup—a thing which they are accustomed to do to Spaniards, without granting life to anyone. After that event, guided by a treacherous Chinese, they suddenly attacked the chief town of Samar, which is a very fine village called Catbalogan. They attacked at dawn, and the father rector and another father and a brother had no little trouble in escaping; they were scarcely able to remove the monstrance of the most holy sacrament, and to hide it in a thicket. The Indians also fled, as far as they were able. Some had not time to do so much, and were captured. Some were sick with smallpox, a kind of pestilence that was among the Indians at that time. They were unable to escape, whereupon the enemy arriving relieved them all of the smallpox by cutting off their heads. In short, they plundered as much as they could, especially the silver and ornaments of the church, which were many and excellent, our residence there being better supplied than our others.



Page 60

When news was received of the damage inflicted by the enemy, two Spanish fleets went in pursuit of them—one from the island of Cebu, and the other from that of Panay. But such was our misfortune that they were unable to encounter the enemy by any means. Thus did the latter go away, laughing at the robberies that they had committed and greedy to make others.

Don Fernando de Silva, who was then governing, because Don Juan Nino had not yet arrived, despatched a small fleet this year to the lands of those enemies, to punish them. Their country lies near Borney, to whose king they are subject. But inasmuch as they have no fixed house or dwelling, as they generally live in their boats, today here and tomorrow there, nothing was done. Consequently, Don Juan Nino, upon his arrival, ordered our fleet prepared in the island of Oton, so that when that enemy came it might attack them. The enemy came, and our fleet sailed out; but half of the caracoas were wrecked in a storm. However, our fleet reforming pursued the enemy, but were unable to overtake them; for as their boats are light and have two prows, in order to escape they do not have to turn their boats about, but only to change the rowers and so return. At least, the result obtained was that the enemy did no damage this year in these islands, and did not capture anything.

The island of Mindanao, which is one of these Filipinas Islands, has rebelled against us; and its chief places have easily accepted the law of Mahoma, which was brought there from the Malucas by the Ternatans. They have done us no damage this year. On the contrary, we have done them considerable. Captain Benitez has made some very successful raids in their country, and has killed many and captured others—who are made slaves, in accordance with the old-time usage of this country, on account of the damages which we have received from those enemies. Now the governor has offered to conquer that island, which is not a very difficult thing to do; but there is always so much attention to be paid to the Dutch, that he has as yet been unable to attend to this.

The Dutch enemy, together with the English, went to attack Macan during former years with seventeen ships. They landed many men on the shore, but the affair turned out so badly for them that they were forced, after many men had been killed, to retire and to raise the siege. But the Portuguese, fearing that the enemy would attempt another year what they had not been able to accomplish then, set about enclosing the city with an excellent wall (for it had none before), and sent Father Geronimo Rodriguez [28] to Manila for some good artillery, which Don Alonso Fajardo gave him. A master founder also went there to make many other pieces, which have been founded; and the city is placed in a very good state of defense. The Portuguese also asked for a good captain and some infantry for whatever occasion might arise. Don Alonso Fajardo gave them as many as one hundred infantrymen,



Page 61

with Don Fernando de Silva, sargento-mayor of the camp of Manila, and an excellent soldier. They stayed in Macan for some time, but the Portuguese, seeing that the Dutch enemy did not come, and that, even if they did come, the city was more than defended; and inasmuch as they did not get along very well with the Castilians, since there was considerable quarreling and strife between those of the two nations, tried to despatch them to Manila. They did so, in a vessel that carried more than five hundred thousand ducados in merchandise.

The Spanish encountered so grievous a storm on their voyage that they were forced to put in at Siam, where they unladed their ship; and, trying to get over the bar of a river in order to relade, they were wrecked. They bought in place of that ship two others, in order to go to Manila; but as the season was advanced, and they could not get away so quickly, they despatched a champan with some eight Spanish sailors. The latter took some of the merchandise, and came to Manila to give news of what had happened. At that time there was a Dutch patache established in the river of Siam, a very beautiful and large river. That vessel had also entered and traded in that kingdom. It was rumored among our men that that Dutch patache had captured the champan that our men were sending to Manila—although such a rumor was untrue, for the said champan arrived safely at Manila. But induced by that false report, Don Fernando de Silva, who was stationed some leguas up the river, having one day observed the Dutch patache attacked it at night with certain very small craft (I think they were two small boats or lanchas, for they had not bought larger vessels); and after fighting with the enemy, with the loss of only one Spaniard, captured the Dutch patache. It had more than twenty thousand pesos in silver and merchandise, and the Dutch aboard it were captured. Had the matter ended there, it would have been a fortunate result. The king of Siam was informed of it, and sent a message to Don Fernando de Silva saying that he should set the Dutch at liberty and give them back their ship and the property which he had taken or captured from them, since it was captured while the Dutch were in his kingdom, under his royal favor and protection. Don Fernando de Silva answered that he would not do so, and broke out in words that might well have been avoided toward the king. The latter quickly collected a numerous fleet of boats, and one day attacked our ships with Japanese (who form the guard of that kingdom) and many Siamese. Our men, fearing what would happen, were hurriedly embarking their merchandise, in order to come to Manila. Our men began to serve the artillery, but there were so many hostile boats that they covered the water. The Spanish craft ran aground in the confusion and danger, whereupon the Siamese (and chiefly the Japanese) entered the ships. Don Fernando de Silva, with sword and buckler in hand, sold his life dearly, and others did the same. But the enemy killed them except those who fled at the first stroke of the victory, who remained alive. I think some thirty were captured. The goods were pillaged, notwithstanding the fact that the king had ordered that good care be taken of them.



Page 62

The captured Spaniards were taken to the court of the king, which is a city more than twice as large as Sevilla. [29] They were led manacled through the streets, receiving many blows, and regarded as traitors. That happened in the year 1624. This disastrous event was learned in Manila by way of Macan, but no attention was given to the matter on account of the death of Governor Don Alonso Fajardo. In the year 1625, another Don Fernando de Silva, of the habit of Santiago, came to act as governor. At that time Father Pedro Morejon [30] arrived at Manila. He came from Roma by way of Yndia and Camboja (which lies next Siam), and was informed of that disaster there. Governor Don Fernando de Silva, seeing that Father Pedro Morejon, as he had been so long a minister in Japon, had great knowledge of, and access to, the Japanese, and that those Japanese who live in Siam have a great part in the government of that kingdom, suggested to the father to go there as ambassador, to see whether he could get what they had captured from our Spaniards, which belonged for the most part to the inhabitants of Manila. The father replied that he could not neglect, before all else, to go to Macan in order to advise his provincial of his procuratorship to Roma; but that his Lordship should write to him, and that he would return at the beginning of the year 1626, which was the season when one could go to Siam. The governor wrote, and the father provincial of Macan sent Father Pedro de Morejon for the said time, besides another Portuguese father, called Antonio Cardin. [31] They reached here in good time. The governor prepared a vessel with some Spaniards of good standing, and despatched them all by the month of January. They reached the kingdom and court of Siam and negotiated what they were able—namely, that the captives be delivered to them, as well as the artillery, and a quantity of iron belonging to our king which the ships were carrying, and which they seized from us, and some other merchandise. For although the king ordered everything to be given up, thinking that the goods were safe, as he had ordered, it was impossible to get them, the soldiers having pillaged them and divided them among themselves.

Father Pedro de Morejon was given a cordial reception by the king, who showed him many favors. At his departure the father told the king that he was leaving Father Cardin in his kingdom, and asked his Highness to protect him. The king offered to do so, and gave permission for all who wished to become Christians. Father Cardin erected his church and commenced his ministry. Father Morejon and the Spaniards returned to Manila, where they arrived in August of 1626; and they delivered to Governor Don Juan Nino, who had now arrived, a present given to them by the king of Siam. Father Morejon, being summoned by his provincial, went to Macao for the second time, where he is now. It is now reported that the governor is not satisfied with what they sent him. Perhaps he will attack Siam with the galleys, in order to punish that kingdom for its actions toward the Spaniards.



Page 63

In order to destroy the trade between this city of Manila and Great China, and between Macan and Japon—the former for us, and the latter for the Portuguese—the Dutch formed a scheme to build a fort on the island of Hermosa. That is an island between Japon, China, and Manila, which extends north and south for more than fifty leguas, while it is about thirty broad. The Dutch built the said fort some years ago, and they have been fortifying it ever since; so that they have already erected four cavaliers, in which they have mounted twenty-four pieces of artillery—besides others that they have mounted on a platform which defends the entrance of the port, as those of the fort do not command it. The Dutch also have a stock-farm, which they began with cattle and horses brought from Japon. For its defense they built another large cavalier in which they mounted a half-dozen pieces, and stationed a few Dutchmen to guard it. They are now at peace with the natives, with whom they were formerly at war and who killed some of their men. In this way they have been established for some five or six years at that point, which they call Pachan. The Chinese have gone there with a great abundance of silks and other merchandise to trade. Consequently, they have made on that account a large alcaiceria, where there are generally more than six thousand Chinese. The Japanese have also gone there from Japon with their ships, although it is said that they are ill satisfied because of I know not what duties that the Dutch asked them to pay. From that, notable damage can ensue to Castilians, Portuguese, and Chinese, since the Dutch are in the passage by which one goes from here to China, and from Macan to Japon. If we have not yet seen the damage so plainly with the eyes, it has been because the enemy are in great lack of ships and men.

In order to counterbalance that scheme and the designs of the Dutch, Don Fernando formed another scheme. He went to seize another port on the same island of Hermosa, some twenty leguas distant from China and thirty from the enemy. For that purpose he sent, in this year of 1626, two galleys with many small boats, infantry, and all that was necessary for the settlement, under an experienced captain called Carreno. They occupied the said port, and it is very good and suitable for our purpose. As our men entered the port, the whole population, numbering fully a thousand houses of the natives who were settled there, fled. Entering the houses, they were enabled to see, by the articles that they found there, that those people were intelligent and civilized. Our soldiers took some food, of which they kept account in order to pay for it—as they ought to do; since I know not what pretext they could have for showing hostility to the natives, since they had received no injury from them.

Page 64

Our soldiers have fortified themselves there excellently. However, at the beginning, the land tried them, for many died, and they suffered great wretchedness and hardships—eating even dogs and rats, also grubs, and unknown herbs, because they soon finished the provisions which they had brought with them, and others had not arrived from Manila, as I shall relate later. But afterwards they got along very well, for many ships came from Great China with many presents and food. The climate is very fine, and like that of Nueva Espana. It has its winter and summer quite temperate, and has many fruits such as we have in our Espana—as for instance, pears and peaches, which are indications that it is as fine a country as is reported. We have also heard that wheat is harvested. The soldiers found skins of lions and tigers; and although there were none of those animals, as there are none in Filipinas, they had no lack of the skins. They sent to summon the Indians, some of whom came. They won them by means of caresses and presents, so that they continue to come. They are not driven from our fort; and they even delivered two infants to us for baptism, and others are petitioning it. There is great need of learning their language. They bring some food, which they exchange for jars, gems, agate, and silver, which they know thoroughly, and whose value they esteem. They have no headman or chief who governs them, but each village governs itself, and some villages have war with others.

The joy received in Manila at the news of the island of Hermosa was exuberant. At that time Don Juan Nino came to govern. He was unable to send them help at the right season [for sailing]; consequently, after it had sailed, the ship put back and was detained for more than four months in a port of this island. It sailed again, and again took refuge at Macan, whence they tried to make the voyage for the third time. They had so severe a storm that they lost their rudder, and reached the coast of China. After great danger and opposition from the Chinese of that region, they refitted, and finally made our port in the island of Hermosa, where they arrived April 29, 1627, and were received with the joy that can be imagined. They left there the supplies they had brought, and returned to Manila.

The governor sent to Macan to ask for a mestizo, Salvator Diaz, who was in the fort of the Dutch and who escaped from them. He has also prohibited vessels from sailing to China which pass near the establishment of the Dutch on the island of Hermosa. It is inferred from that that he is thinking of attacking the fort of the Dutch.

The persecution of the missionaries in Japon has daily been assuming greater fury, and the doors are daily being shut more closely on the religious. It has been ordered under penalty of death, and of being burned with their merchandise and ships, that no ship sail from Manila to Japon. Accordingly, one ship which sailed last year and which they had not notified of the edict, they notified and ordered to return immediately to Manila, without allowing anyone to disembark, or to buy or sell anything—keeping them, on the contrary, shut up on the ship and guarded. The Japanese made a law that no Japanese could leave or enter the kingdom unless he first forswore our holy faith, *etc.*



Page 65

LETTER FROM FELIPE IV TO TAVORA

The King. To Don Juan Nino de Tavora, my governor and captain-general of the Filipinas Islands, and president of my royal Audiencia there: Six letters which you wrote me—five on the twentieth of the month of July, and the other on the twenty-second of the same month last year (1626)—dealing with the wars, have been received and considered in my Council of War for the Indias, and you will be satisfied on all points.

You say that Pedro de Heredia wrote to you that he had not fortified the island of Manados [32] and the straits of Santa Margarita, because it seemed to him of little use. Afterward, however, seeing that many tributarios might be acquired; that, being pagans, missionaries were needed; and that the expenses of these strongholds might be lightened by the rice which they furnished—he sent to you asking for fifty men to occupy the fort which he was to build there. Seeing that he had orders for it and that it was so advantageous for the service of God and myself, you sent them to him. It is well, and I order you, as having the affair under your present direction, to provide everything which is necessary thereto.

In your advices, the said Pedro de Heredia wrote also that it would be to our great advantage to send him the lord of Terrenate, who is in this city, in order to bring about some agreement between him and the king of Tidore, which will be of considerable value. Your orders in this matter have already been sent you.

I am advised by you that three of the enemy's ships were in the port of Malayo, and that it was understood that a fleet would arrive in May, 1625; I am also advised of the ten ships which the said Pedro de Heredia had.

I have considered the number of galleons and pataches with which you are provided, and the galleys which were in process of construction. I confide in your zeal and care to provide for the defense of those islands, as I expect from you, doing on your part all that you shall find possible. You will have assistance from here, and I have written to my viceroy in Nueva Espana regarding the measures to be taken therefor. He and my royal officials have now been ordered to send at the first opportunity to these kingdoms six thousand ducados, on account of the usual situado that goes to those islands. The money will be sent on a separate account to the House of Trade in Sevilla, to buy the arms that you ask for; when it arrives there, these will be forwarded to you.

You informed me that at the death of Don Geronimo de Silva his property was distrained, on account of the suit that was proceeding against him for beating a retreat two years ago with the fleet. You petition that in such a case property should be distrained from no one, except the proceedings be always taken in conformity with justice. The same [33] in the other matter which you mention, that in prosecuting the

commanders of the ships of the said fleet, process should be conducted by written charges.



Page 66

You say also that because the Order of Saint John was the heir to the estate of the said Don Geronimo, you ordered that whatever property might be found should be deposited in the probate treasury, and that the landed property should be administered by the courts. You also notified the said order, that it might decide what course to take, and that any debts of the said Don Geronimo must first be paid. The matter has been considered, and you and that Audiencia will take such measures as are just, in case the estate is any further indebted.

You say also that the office of sargento-mayor was held at first by alferezes, and afterward by captains—who drew, however, only the pay of captains; and that sixty-five escudos of ten reals were assigned to Don Fernando de Silva by the treasury council that was held in that city—which sum you understood was paid everywhere to captains ranking as sargentos-mayor—on condition of obtaining my approval, which has not yet been presented, and you ask me to approve it because it seems just that if captains and the master-of-camp receive what is elsewhere received by the sargento-mayor, who has more arduous duties, the latter should receive a salary accordingly. It has seemed unwise to me to make any change. You will give orders, then, that the payment of this salary shall proceed no further; and that no person filling the said position of sargento-mayor shall receive any more than the salary formerly paid; and you will cause the increase to be collected from those who have obtained it, or ordered it, or from their bondsmen, so that the amount shall be immediately deposited in my royal exchequer. In order that this be more exactly fulfilled, I have had decrees to this effect sent to the inspector of that Audiencia and the officers of my royal exchequer in that city. This must also be understood in the case of Don Juan de Quinones, whom you appointed to this place.

In conformity with what you wrote regarding the sentence which Doctor Don Alvaro de Mesa y Lugo issued against Captain Miguel de Villegas (who had been a captain in the infantry, and was a substitute in your personal service), of three hundred lashes and ten years in the galleys, I have sent a decree that the said sentence shall not be executed. The said sentence is overruled; and the said Don Alvaro is to send to my said Council an official copy of the proceedings, and the reasons which he had for giving that sentence. In the future military customs must be observed, and no such punishments imposed, as you will see by the said decree, which is sent to you with this letter.

In regard to your request that it be proclaimed that the shipmen who serve in those islands—such as pilots, masters, and other officers—need not pay the tax on their salaries in virtue of the decree which I commanded to be sent, ordering the collection of dues on all the grants for offices, incomes and gratuities that are conferred, I think it well that the said shipmen—mariners, pilots, masters, or other persons who draw pay on the rolls—shall be excused from paying the said salary tax; but it must be collected from all other officers holding commissions or decrees in which our favor is declared. You will cause the said decree to be executed in conformity with this.



Page 67

In the letter in which you spoke of the offices to which you had made appointments after you took possession of your duties, you say that on account of the resignation of Pedro Sotelo de Morales, [34] who served as the warden of the Santiago fort in that city, you appointed Don Antonio de Leoz to that office with a yearly salary of eight hundred pesos, the same salary which his predecessors have received, with the condition of receiving my approval within five years. But because persons who hold the offices *ad interim* are not to take more than half the salary which is attached to the office, in conformity with the provisions of various royal decrees, you will take measures and give orders that the said Don Antonio de Leoz or his bondsmen shall return to my royal exchequer any sum that he has received exceeding half the said salary; and I shall write to my royal officials in that city to collect it. You are advised that in the future such appointees are not to receive more than half the salary. [Madrid, September 3, 1627.]

I The King Countersigned by Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras.

LAWS REGARDING THE SANGLEYS

[The following laws are translated from *Recopilacion de leyes de las Indias* (Madrid, 1841), lib. vi, tit. xviii. For method of treatment, see *Vol. XVII* of this series, p. 27.]

Law III

The bishops do not permit the Christian Chinese who are converted to our holy Catholic faith in the Filipinas Islands to return to their own country, so that intercourse and living among heathen may not cause them to fall into the peril of apostasy; and the governor, knowing that they have no other manner of livelihood except their trading in the neighborhood, buying provisions in order to supply the community, does not allow them to leave Manila without permission, which is a very great obstacle and stumbling-block to the conversion of others. We order that no fee be charged for those permits; and the governor shall have great consideration and care, that no trouble results from them, in respect to the Chinese having free passage through those islands. [Felipe II—Madrid, June 11, 1594.]

Law IX

The goods of the Sangleys who come to trade in Filipinas with Chinese merchandise, and who sell them at wholesale at a price [named] by persons deputed for it (which is what is there called *pancada*), are left in their possession under guarantee that they will not dispose of them without an order from the governor; and that a price will not be set on the small things, but only on certain fine products. And inasmuch as this is advisable, we order that the Sangleys be notified who shall have to return to those



islands, that they must and shall pass according to the laws and orders that shall be made for them. And, in respect to the pancada, it shall be continued with, all gentleness, so that the Sangleys shall not receive any injury; and so that no occasion be given them so that they shall discontinue their coming to attend to their trading. [Felipe II—Madrid, June 11, 1594.]



Page 68

Law X

We have been informed that the Sangley Indians who go from China to Filipinas to trade, receive injuries and harsh treatment from the Spaniards; and especially that the guards posted in their ships by our royal officials ask and take bribes from them, in order that they might permit and allow the Sangleys to take out certain things that they bring from their country to give to private persons; that the employees who go to register the ships take and scatter all the best merchandise, and leave that which is not of so good quality, from which there results a considerable loss on the balance, and often the Sangleys cannot sell what is left, as they could have done with the good merchandise which was taken away from them; that even when the Chinese who go to register take the best, the officials say that they will pay for it at the price for which the balance is sold, so that they only pay the price of the worst and common merchandise. Thus the Chinese lose what would be the most valuable things that they have if they sold them freely; for, fearing lest the employees who go to register take from them the merchandise at the time of evaluation, they place on their merchandise a greater value than it is really worth, so that they pay the duties at the rate at which the merchandise is valued, although the truth is that they sell it later for much less. [We are also informed] that the masts of their vessels are taken from them, in order to step these in the vessels built in those islands, for their masts are light; and that they are given in exchange others so heavy that their ships cannot support them and are wrecked, from which the Chinese suffer grievously. And since it is right that when those people go to trade they be welcomed and given good treatment, in order that upon their return to their country, they may take good accounts of the treatment and welcome received from our vassals, that others may thereby be induced to go, and by means of that communication receive the Christian instruction and profess our holy Catholic faith, to which our chief desire and intent is directed: we order the governors that, after having examined the character of these injuries, they issue the necessary orders for the cessation of such troubles. They shall not allow the Sangley Chinese, or any other traders, to receive any injury, molestation, or oppression such as is mentioned herein, or others of any sort; and they shall be very careful to treat the Sangleys well and to give them good despatch. They shall punish those who offend and aggrieve them. We charge this upon them very earnestly, as it is a matter of great moment to our royal service. [Felipe II—Madrid, June 11, 1594.]

Law XIII

We order the governor and captain-general not to allow the citizens and residents of Manila to keep Sangleys in their houses; and to prohibit them from sleeping inside the city. He shall, if necessary, order the judge of the foreigners to punish him who does not observe this, severely and with heavy fines. [Felipe III—Madrid, May 6, 1608.]



Page 69

Law VI

Inasmuch as the alcaldes-mayor of Manila have claimed the right to try the suits and causes of the Chinese who live in the Parian, jointly with its governor, we consider it fitting to order the ruling of ley xxiv, titulo iii, libro v, which concedes the first instance exclusively to the governor [of the Parian], with appeals to the Audiencia. [35] Now it is our will, and we order the president, governor, and captain-general, and the Audiencia, not to allow any ordinary judge or one who has received a commission, to try civil or criminal suits or causes of the Sangleys in the first instance, even if they be auditors of that Audiencia, who shall be performing the duties of criminal alcaldes; neither shall they try cases regarding the locations or inspection of shops or their trade (for it pertains exclusively to the governor of the Parian to try such), except it be a case so extraordinary, necessary, and requisite that it becomes advisable to limit this rule. [Felipe III—Ventosilla, October 15, 1603; El Pardo, June 12, 1614.]

Law XI

In the city of Manila the custom was established that a certain number of fowls be given to the president, auditors, and officials of the Audiencia annually at a price lower than the current rate. The governor of the Chinese was ordered to make the assessment among all the Chinese, obliging them to give weekly so many fowls at a fixed and lower price, and to punish and fine him who did not obey it. That has caused the Chinese considerable injury. The governor of the Chinese got as many others at the same price. We order that no such assessment be made or asked from the Chinese, and that it be left to each person's own will to buy those fowls that are necessary to him, and to the Chinese to sell them at the price that they can and that is current. [Felipe III—Madrid, May 29, 1619.]

Law VIII

Many Sangleys are converted to our holy Catholic faith in the Filipinas Islands, who are married to native Indian women of those islands, and live in the environs of the city. If a site be given them in the unfilled lands where they can assemble and form a village, in order to cultivate and sow the land, in which they are very skillful, they would become very useful to the community, and would not occupy themselves in retailing and hawking food; while they would become more domestic and peaceful, and the city more secure, even should the Sangleys increase in number. We order the governor and captain-general to enact thus, and to endeavor to preserve them and to look out for them with the care that is advisable. [Felipe III—San Lorenzo, August 25, 1620.]

Law IV

The governor shall have particular care not to impose personal services on the Sangleys, outside of their [usual] employment and rules; and he shall endeavor to give them good treatment, in order to induce and incite others to go thither, to be converted to our holy Catholic faith. [Felipe III—San Lorenzo, September 5, 1620.]



Page 70

Law I

It is advisable for the security of the city of Manila, the island of Luzon, and all the other islands of that government, that the number of the Chinese be very moderate, and that it do not exceed six thousand, since that number is sufficient for the service of the country; and, if that number be increased, the troubles that have been experienced may result, notwithstanding the permission that was conceded by ley iv, titulo xv, libro ii, [36] which is to be understood until this limitation is reached. Likewise it is advisable that there should not be so many Japanese in that city, for they already exceed three thousand, because there has been neglect and carelessness in driving them away from there; while the number of the Chinese has been increased through greed for the eight pesos that each one pays for his license. In regard to the above, we order our governor and captain-general to apply the fitting remedy, taking note that the licenses are not to be given for money, or for any other interest, either in their own behalf, or for that of other government employees. They shall only consider what is most advisable to the welfare of the public cause, the security of the land, trade and commerce, and the friendly reception of the foreigners and surrounding peoples, and the other nations with whom there shall be peace. That commerce and relationship shall be continued, and all care and caution shall always be taken so that the Chinese and Japanese shall not be so numerous, and that those who shall be there may live in quietness, fear, and submission. But that shall not be any reason for not treating them well. [Felipe III—Ventosilla, November 4, 1606; Madrid, May 29, 1620. Felipe IV—Madrid, December 31, 1622.]

Law II

The licenses that the governor of Filipinas shall issue so that some Sangley Chinese may remain in the islands, shall be with the consent of our royal officials, and account shall be rendered of all. The money resulting therefrom (eight pesos for each license) shall be placed in our royal treasury. A separate book shall be kept there, and names and marks [of identification?] shall be entered in it distinctly, so that there may be no concealment. [37] [Felipe III—Madrid, January 12, 1614. Felipe IV—Madrid, November 21, 1625.]

Law VII

The Sangleys converted to our holy Catholic faith shall not pay tribute for the first ten years after their conversion; after that time it shall be collected from them as from the natives of Filipinas. [38] [Felipe IV—Madrid, June 14, 1627.]

Law XII

The Sangley Chinese of Filipinas have a box with three keys, in which each Sangley deposits twelve reals per year in order to meet their obligations to our royal service with that fund. We order that if there be any balance in any year, it be not withdrawn; and that the Sangleys be assessed so much less the following year. [39] [Felipe IV—Madrid, September 10, 1627.]



Page 71

DECREES REGARDING THE RELIGIOUS

Concerning lawlessness of Augustinian religious

The King. To the president and auditors of my royal Audiencia of the city of Manila of the Philipinas Islands: In a letter written to me by Don Francisco de Caravajal Campo Frio, dated August two of the former year six hundred and twenty-five, he declares that while alcalde-mayor of the province of Balayan, he heard that Diego Larias Maldonado had arrived there, who had run away with the wife of a certain man. He had them arrested in the town of Batangas, a mission of Augustinian friars. He declares that Fray Antonio Muxica, prior of the said order, at the head of his fiscal and choristers, broke open the gates of the prison, and loosed the prisoners, after maltreating the government agents. And although he drew up a report about this action, and informed their superior of it—sending the latter a copy of the report, while he kept the original, in order to give you an account of it—the superior did not inflict punishment, but on the contrary exerted himself to get hold of the original report. But as he did not succeed in this, two religious, accompanied by over one hundred natives, went to Caravajal's house, surrounded it, went up stairs where he was, and took away the said [original] report from him, after having bound him and maltreated him by word and deed. Although he informed you of it, that crime has not yet been punished. Inasmuch as it is not right that such a crime remain without punishment, I have considered it fitting to send you a copy of the said letter, so that if the relation made by the said Don Francisco de Caravajal Campo Frio be true, you may enact justice, in order that, in the future, it may serve as a warding. For this you shall have recourse to the provincial of the said order. Given in Madrid, May twenty-one, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I The King

Countersigned by Don Juan Fernando Ruiz de Contreras, and signed by the members of the Council.

[*Endorsed*: "To the Manila Audiencia, sending it a copy of a letter written to your Majesty by Don Francisco Caravajal Campo Frio in regard to the outrage committed against him by certain religious of St. Augustine, so that, if his report be true, justice may be done."]

Granting alms to the Augustinians

The King. To the officials of my royal treasury of the Philipinas Islands: You know already that it was ordered by a decree of the king my father (who is in glory), dated August seven, of the former year six hundred and one, that a ration for two additional religious be given for four years longer to the convent of St. Augustine, of that city of Manila, in the manner that it is given to four religious in that convent; and that he

prolonged the said time for another four years by another decree of six hundred and sixteen,



Page 72

and for another four years (which are completed) by another decree of May nine, six hundred and twenty. Now Fray Hernando Guerrero, of the said order, bishop-elect of the city of Nueva Segovia in those islands, has reported to me in the name of the said convent, that the religious of his order from the other convents are entertained and treated there in their sicknesses; and that it is in a college and seminary of grammar, the arts, and theology, whence subjects go out to preach the holy gospel. In consideration of that, he petitions me to order that the said ration continue to be given to the said two religious for such time as I may choose.

The matter having been examined by the members of my royal Council of the Indias, I have considered it advisable to order that it be given to them for another four years, that time to run and be counted from the day on which the said last four years were completed. Accordingly, I order you to pay to the said monastery of the Order of St. Augustine in that city, from any revenue that may be in that my treasury, the said ration for the said two additional religious, during the said four years of this prolongation, in the same form and manner as it is given to the other four religious; for such is my will.

Given in Madrid, June eleven, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I The King Countersigned by Fernando Ruiz de Contreras.

Recommendation of the Council of the Indias regarding the Recollects

Sire:

Fray Pedro de la Madre de Dios, procurator of the order of discalced Augustinians in the Philipinas Islands, has represented that the poverty of the religious of that order is very great, as they have no income; and inasmuch as medicines are dear, they cannot get the money in order to buy those necessary for the sick, whence it follows that they cannot maintain the health necessary for their attending to the ministry of preaching and instruction among the Indians, and the relief of the royal conscience. He petitions your Majesty, in consideration of the above, to grant alms to the said religious, so that they be given the medicines urgently necessary to treat themselves, as these are given to the religious of St. Dominic and St. Francis. He says that what they can use would amount to one hundred and fifty pesos annually. The matter having been examined in the Council, and the poverty of the said order appearing, and seeing that they have no income, and having considered how well they serve our Lord in the conversion of the natives under their charge; it seems best that your Majesty grant favor to the said religious, for six years, of the medicines that may be necessary in order to cure the sick, provided that it do not exceed in any year the stated sum of one hundred and fifty pesos above mentioned. Your Majesty will show them such favor as is in accord with your royal will. Madrid, November 4, 1627.



[Signed by the members of the Council.]



Page 73

[*Endorsed*: "Council of the Indias. November 4, 1627." "+That your Majesty might grant concession for six years to the discalced friars of the Order of St. Augustine, of the medicines necessary for the treatment of their sick." *In a different hand, evidently that of the king*: "+It is well."]

DECREES REGARDING THE CHINESE

The King. To Don Juan Nino de Tavora, my governor and captain-general of the Filipinas Islands, and president of my royal Audiencia resident therein: Fray Melchor de Manzano, of the Order of Preachers, has reported to me, in the name of the Sangley Chinese who live in those islands, that the said Chinese, in order to avoid the wrongs that they received from the [government] ministers who were exacting daily assessments that were levied on them for my royal service, established a chest with three keys, in which each one was to deposit annually twelve reals in silver, in order to aid in the despatches of the warships, galleys, and trading-vessels for Nueva Espana, the powder-house, the artillery, the building of ships and other undertakings. Among other conditions that they required, in order that this assessment might be made among them, was one that they were to have no protector; but that in case one were assigned them, he be not the fiscal of that Audiencia, as such office was incompatible with his duties, and because of the experience of long years that it was rather a damage than an advantage to him—and that, for that reason, the said office of protector had been made separate in the beginning from that of fiscal, until Don Juan de Albarado Bracamonte, when fiscal, had so negotiated that the said occupation be assigned to him. The father petitioned me that since the said Sangley Chinese spend so much in aiding my service and pay so fully the salaries to their alcalde, and chief of guard, lesser protector, and to the ministers of instruction, without any expense therein to my royal treasury, it be ordered that the said fund cannot be altered or suppressed, unless the said Chinese should voluntarily wish to do away with it or to make some alteration, or change certain of the conditions which they established when the fund was established; and that the said office of protector be distinct from that of fiscal, and that the office be given to a person who will protect and defend them. If there remain any balance in the said fund at the end of each year, he petitions that the Chinese be allowed to spend it, without the permission of any person, for the welfare and benefit of their village or church. By that means they will be spared new expenses that must necessarily be made for that purpose. After examination by the members of my Council of the Indias, of this request and of the statements regarding it by my fiscal of the Council, Licentiate Juan Pardo, it was voted that I should order this my decree to be given, by which I command you to provide



Page 74

and order that the said office of protector be not held by the fiscal of that Audiencia. From now and henceforth, you shall appoint to it a satisfactory person, giving him the salary that is assigned. You shall charge him to look after the said Sangley Chinese very carefully, so that they may not be annoyed or vexed, and that no ill treatment be accorded them. You shall order that the balance remaining each year in the said fund be left there, and that the Chinese be assessed so much less the following year, After the accomplishment and execution of the aforesaid, you and the said Audiencia shall inform me of the status of matters, and what are the facts in regard to what is mentioned by the said Fray Melchor de Manzano, and the advantages or disadvantages, present and future, of what he asks for; so that, after my said Council has examined it, the advisable measures may be taken. Madrid, September 10, 1627.

I The King By order of the king, our sovereign: *Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras*

The King. Fray Melchor Manzano, of the Order of St. Dominic, has reported to me, in behalf of the Sangley Chinese living in the Parian outside the walls of the city of Manila, that they experience much extortion and injury, on account of not only what pertains to the Christianity that they profess, but their liberty, possessions, and honor, by making them cut their hair when they become Christians—a thing regarded as ignominious by their nation, and which is an obstacle to their conversion, and contrary to the orders of the decree of the king our sovereign and grandfather, who is in glory; as also that they pay annually sixty-four reals in silver, in addition to the ordinary tribute, or that they return to their own country, which means that they are forced to abandon the faith which they received with baptism. He declares that that tribute was never paid by the Christians until it was imposed by Don Alonso de Faxardo, my former governor of the Filipinas Islands, contrary to the advice of my Audiencia resident therein. Fray Melchor has petitioned me that, attentive to the above, I be pleased to order that those converted to our holy Catholic faith be not obliged to cut their hair, or pay the said tribute, or anything else besides the ordinary tribute paid by the natives of the said islands; or that it be moderated so that their conversion may not thereby be made difficult, and that those who once receive the faith be not obliged to abandon it by returning to their country because of their inability to pay so large a tribute—since the majority of those converted are poor laborers, who cannot earn that tribute. Having examined the matter in my royal Council of the Indias, I have considered it expedient to order this my decree to be issued. By it I order that for the first ten years after their conversion the said Sangley Chinese pay no tribute, and that none be collected from them, as I have commanded shall be done in regard to the other pagan Indians who are converted. After the ten years, the tribute shall be collected from them, as from the natives of the said islands. I order my governor and captain-general of the islands to see that the above is strictly obeyed and observed, and not to allow their hair to be cut, in observance of the decree that has been issued concerning this matter. Madrid, November 19, 1627.



Page 75

I The King By order of the king, our sovereign: *Don Fernando Ruiz De Contreras*

INADVISABILITY OF A SPANISH POST ON THE ISLAND OF FORMOSA

I would consider it a very important fact that the Spaniards of Filipinas have seized and fortified a site on the island of Hermosa, if that would be the efficacious means of driving out the Dutch from their fort and from that island by force of arms, but otherwise not.

In order to discuss this proposition reasonably, it will be necessary first to investigate the objects that the Dutch may have had in order to have fortified, as they have done for the last three or four years, the island of Hermosa.

Some have thought that the purpose of the Dutch must be to destroy commerce between China and Filipinas, by plundering more at their ease the Chinese ships, because they are there near China, and in a place where the fleets from Manila which have sometimes defeated them, cannot attack them. But in my judgment, this is not their purpose, although it is a fact that they are very near the coasts of China in the island of Hermosa. For that reason, even the Chinese, before they set sail, ascertain by means of oared craft whether Dutch vessels are waiting in that place. Consequently, they either do not leave their ports, or if they leave, accomplish their voyage, since they can do so easily by sailing so as not to go within sight of the island. But it is impossible to escape the Dutch ships when they await the Chinese on the coasts of Filipinas, as they have done since the year 609, when they began that practice, until that of 625. During that time scarcely any ship escaped them; for the Dutch generally go to the coasts of Filipinas when there is no time to advise the Chinese not to leave their country. The latter, having sailed, necessarily fall into the hands of the Dutch. However, it is true that when the Dutch await the Chinese on the coasts of Manila, they need a larger fleet; and that they risk its loss by fighting with that of Manila. Here the capture of the Chinese is assured, while for the above reasons (of which the Dutch are not ignorant) that is almost impossible in the island of Hermosa.

In my opinion, then, the purpose of the Dutch is to establish a factory in the island of Hermosa, in order to trade with the Chinese by buying silks from them, and to sail with these to Japon (although taking some of them to Europa also, as well as other goods), just as the Portuguese of Macan do. I am persuaded of this, for, while I was sailing from Filipinas to Nueva Espana as captain and master of the ship "San Francisco," which was wrecked in Japon in the year 609—the first time when the Dutch went to that kingdom—the Dutch petitioned for a factory from him whom we style emperor of Japon, offering to take him silks from China. Thereupon it was given to them, notwithstanding that the emperor



Page 76

was informed by the Spaniards, and by one Guillermo Adan [40]—an Englishman who had been living married in Japon for many years, to whom the emperor turned for information—that the Dutch were rebel vassals [of the Spaniards] and pirates; and that they could not get the silks if they did not plunder them from the Chinese. Thus did they establish their factory in the port of Firando, where they have maintained themselves to this very day, taking the silks that they have pillaged from the Chinese, and certain cloth stuffs from Europa, and buying food and supplies for their forces in the Malucas and other islands of those regions. Governor Don Juan de Silva, having conquered on the coasts of Filipinas the fleet of the Dutch who were robbing the Chinese in the year 610, it was learned from the instructions of Count Mauricio that they were forbidden to plunder the Chinese and other nations, and that they were only permitted to trade with them. Thus, although they robbed the Chinese, it was on their own responsibility, and incited by greed; and even that they palliated by making a price on the silks, by weighing them, and settling the account for that amount. Paying for the goods partly in reals—although only a small part—they gave to the Chinese due-bills on the factory of La Sunda. I saw those papers in their own flagship, as I was captured by the Dutch in the said year 610, when I was returning from the wreck at Japon to the Filipinas. Nor does it contradict this that since then they have continued to plunder the Chinese, since they have given out that they do it because the silks were bought for silver which the Spaniards of Manila are sending to China; and because even supposing that the silks be some belonging to the Chinese, they do not wish the latter to trade with the Spaniards, their enemies. Consequently, although the Dutch have pillaged them, it has been by affecting this pretext, and giving them to understand that the Dutch were not their enemies.

But what most persuades me to believe that this is the object of the Dutch is because they are not ignorant of the great advantage to them of buying silks from the Chinese and taking their investments to Japon; for it is evident to them from the high profits made by the Portuguese of Macan. That profit will be greater for them because of the greater ease of making the investment, and their nearer and easier navigation. Whenever any other nation wishes to trade with the Chinese, that trading must be done entirely with silver; and as the Dutch can take so little silver from Europa, and have no opportunity to get it from Japon unless in exchange for Chinese merchandise, it is certain that, both because of the high profits of this trade and in order to maintain themselves in their factory at Japon—whence they furnish the forts of the Malucas, Ambuena, and other places with supplies and some food—they will procure the trade with the Chinese by all possible means, by maintaining a factory in the island of Hermosa. Thus, becoming wealthy, they will utterly destroy Macan and deprive the Filipinas of the trade of Chinese silks which they had in Japon, which was formerly of so great profit that the investment generally yielded one hundred per cent in eight or nine months.



Page 77

It is to be noted that this trade of Macan and Filipinas with Japon is the principal thing that should be aided by Espana, for it does not involve the danger of having the silver of the Indias wasted in China, if voyages are made to Macan from Lisboa by way of India, because it comes from China to Portugal, and from Nueva Espana to the Filipinas in return for what is taken to Nueva Espana. As for the investments made in Macan and Filipinas for Japon, the return for these is silver from the mines of Japon itself.

Now, then, it seems very advisable, for the above reasons, immediately to drive out the Dutch from the island of Hermosa, if there is any possibility and power therefor, uniting the forces of Filipinas, if necessary, with those of Macan—to whom the question is so vital, both because of the said reason of the commerce (which is of prime importance), and because the island of Hermosa lies in the path of the voyage from Macan to Japon; and also, I do not deny, because it is possible that the Dutch have taken a port in the island of Hermosa in order to conquer Macan therefrom, to which they are very near, as they attempted to do in the year 622. Therefore, it will be more expedient and convenient to drive out the Dutch from this island of Hermosa as soon as it is attempted; and that will be very gratifying to the Chinese, who are much offended at the Dutch because of the many robberies of their ships in the Filipinas trade that the Dutch have committed for the last seventeen years, and are bitterly hostile to them. But although it seems that that hostility will be sufficient, for the present, for the Chinese not to make any beginning in commerce in the island of Hermosa with the Dutch, that disinclination will disappear in a short time—both because of the kind reception that the Chinese will experience from the Dutch, and because the Chinese are so notably covetous that, although they are prohibited under penalty of losing life and property from trading with Japon, some ships laden with silks have gone to that kingdom during the last few years, pretending in Chinese ports that they are going to the Filipinas.

The above is what occurs to me in regard to the first part. In regard to the second, namely, that it is not advisable for us to have a port in the island of Hermosa, whether the Dutch are there or not, my opinion is the following.

Since the Dutch are there, one would think it advisable to prevent them by force of arms from the commerce of China. But for that one must attack either the Chinese or the Dutch. Since the Chinese are our friends, and since we cannot live in the Filipinas without their trade, I do not see how it can be done justifiably, as they are free to trade with all. Even should we attempt it, they will oblige us to permit them [to trade as they choose] by taking the trade from the Filipinas. But if it should have to be by attacking the ships of the Dutch, new and very long and costly wars would be renewed which would complete the exhaustion of the Filipinas, as has been done in those of Terrenate. Then, too, we would not have greater advantages in this war in the island of Hermosa than in those of Terrenate; for it also is a war to be carried on with ships, and the Dutch have their factories of Japon very near by. They are not inferior to us in accommodations, although the island of Hermosa is near the Filipinas.



Page 78

But if the Dutch were expelled from it, neither do I find any advantage in the Spaniards having a fort and settlement in that island at present, considering the condition of the Filipinas, unless it be to prevent the return of the enemy to refortify it. For first we must determine for that purpose, whether we can prevent that, by the nature of the island and by other circumstances that would render it very difficult—as was seen in Terrenate, when, although we had five hundred or more Spaniards there, the Dutch built another fort almost in sight of ours (which they still hold), as soon as we gained that small island. Now, too, although the Dutch were fortified first in the island of Hermosa, they have not prevented us from effecting a settlement there. For among other things, for such purposes, more men are necessary, and the cost of those men with whom a fortress in a kingdom not one's own is generally maintained.

But, as this object is not involved in the other considerations which present themselves to my mind for keeping up a Spanish settlement in that island, I do not see that, for the present, the Spaniards are obliged to do that. For that island is not of importance to us, either for its own products or for the commerce of China—on the former ground, because it is a poor and barren land, of which it is now always said in the Filipinas that it only produces fruits and timber; nor is it for the second, for if it be made a way-station, wherein to invest in the silks of China, that means to add a new voyage from the Filipinas, which on account of its expenses cannot make up for the convenience of purchasing in Filipinas those same products, which the Chinese carry to Manila. If one tries to say that, by this means, the Chinese ships would not be stopped by the Dutch ships that await them on the coasts of Filipinas; and that if that voyage be made from the island of Hermosa in Spanish ships, they will sail more secure: I answer that there is less danger for the ships as they sail now. For, since the Chinese do not understand latitude and the directions of the compass perfectly, they do not know enough to go [by direct routes] to sight land in the Filipinas, thus making safe the coast where the Dutch await them; [41] but in that case [i.e., if they go only to Formosa] the Dutch, changing their position, would go to await the Chinese and our ships near our port or the island of Hermosa. Since those ships would have to sail so well equipped that they could defend themselves, it would be so costly an undertaking that it could not be maintained—especially at the present time, when the Filipinas are so exhausted and so in need of men, by reason of the reinforcements to Maluco, the entrances into Mindanao, and the insurrections in certain provinces of the natives. Besides, there is the so great danger to Manila from the swarms of abandoned heathen Sangleys who live there, besides other Chinese residents who are married and Christians, but lazy, and the great number of non-producing Japanese there also; and for security and defense from all these, the Spaniards do not even possess what is necessary.

Page 79

Neither has that island of Hermosa such a location that it can be desirable for the ships of Filipinas that sail both to Japon and to Macan, to put in or to seek shelter there; and even less so for those returning from a port where they have taken refuge when they sail to Nueva Espana, or when, in sailing from Nueva Espana to Filipinas, by arriving late, the vendavals overtake them; or for ships on any other of the courses that we sail today.

But if one would say that it is a matter of importance for greater attempts that could be offered in time, by reason of the entrance into or conversion of China, that is not approved now. On the contrary, I fear from the caution and mistrust of the Chinese, that if we maintain a settlement in the island of Hermosa, and it is not clear to them that it is strictly necessary for that conservation, [they will act] without heeding other ends which they must obtain by way of diverting the trade with the Filipinas (since we see that they forced the Portuguese to tear down the fortification that they permitted them to erect in Macan, in view of the risk of its being captured by the Dutch in the year 622, who threatened to return to attempt it with a greater fleet the following year, although they had not returned up to the year 625). They are not unaware that Castilians and Portuguese are vassals of one and the same king. Neither have the Dutch failed to publish (as they did in Japon), that it is the custom of the king of Espana to conquer kingdoms under pretext of religion. That report, according to the religious of Japon themselves, has been one of the chief causes for the instigation of so terrible a persecution against Christians. Very true is it that the success in conversion in which his Majesty has so disinterested and holy an end, can neither be assured nor guided only by human reason. Consequently, what I judge to be an unsuitable thing might be the best method to attain it. In this argument one ought also to consider the heathen natives themselves in the island of Hermosa; but, admitting this, even for them at present I conclude that his Majesty is under no obligations whatever, because he has in the Filipinas not a few Indians who pay tribute, but who do not have sufficient ministers to instruct them. Also there are many heathen, who, because their country is not yet conquered, are without any knowledge at all of the holy gospel. But I shall not go into greater detail on this point, for it may, perhaps, seem to be outside the question.

Neither do I imagine that all that has occurred to me concerning this matter, and much more, has been left unconsidered by Don Fernando de Silva, governor of Filipinas, at whose order a site was occupied on Hermosa Island; for he is a very prudent gentleman and a gallant soldier, and one who will not have permitted the desire for glory and honor, of which the discoverers and conquerors of new lands are justly worthy, to carry him away. Yet I do not, on that account, regard myself as under no obligations to advise you of my opinion. Madrid, December 20, 1627.



Page 80

Doctor Don Juan Cevicos

DOCUMENTS OF 1628-1629

Relation of 1627-28. [Unsigned]; July, 1628. Report of appointments made by the governor. Juan Nino de Tavora; August 2, 1628. Letters to Felipe IV. Juan Nino de Tavora; August 4, 1628. Economic reasons for suppressing the silk trade of China in Spain and its colonies. Juan Velazquez Madrco; October 7, 1628. Decrees regarding the Chinese. Felipe IV; June, 1628-March, 1629. Relations of 1628-29. Hernando Estrado, and others; 1628-29.

Sources: Most of these documents are from MSS. in the Archivo general de Indias, Sevilla, The first one is from the Ventura del Arco MSS. (Ayer library); the fifth, from the Archivo Historico Nacional, Madrid; and the last, from MSS. in the Real Academia de la Historia, Madrid.

Translations: The second of these documents is translated by Robert W. Haight; the second part of the last, by Arthur B. Myrick; all the rest, by James A. Robertson.

RELATION OF 1627-28

Copy of a relation-written by a father of this residence of Manila on the condition of these Filipinas Islands, and other surrounding kingdoms and provinces, from the month of July, 1627, until that of 1628.

In the port of Cavite, which lies three leguas away from and opposite the city of Manila, four very fine galleons were being equipped, that in size and strength could compare with the best in the world. For the flagship was the "Concepcion;" for almiranta, the "Santa Teresa;" while the other two were called "San Yldefonso" and the "Pena de Francia." Besides these there was another smaller ship called the "Rosario," and two other pataches and two galleys. The work was progressing rapidly; for as soon as the merchant ships that sail to Nueva Espana were despatched, our people had to begin their voyage to the island of Hermosa near China, in order to dislodge the Dutch who were fortifying themselves there. [42] That might result in notable damage to this city of Manila, and to Macao, by obstructing their trade with China, Japon, and other kingdoms. The food, ammunition, and artillery were already embarked, and many implements of war, in order to carry on the war by sea and land. On July 7. they began to lade the flagship with quantities of tiling which it was also necessary to take. But, burdened with the great weight, the flagship showed that it was not to make the voyage; for it commenced to leak so badly that it could not be kept pumped out. Consequently, it was necessary to unlade it, and they had to resolve to leave it behind in the port, to their great sorrow.



Page 81

The galleon "San Yldefonso" became the flagship. The season was already advanced, and especially for the galleys, which need more calm weather to enable them to navigate. Accordingly, the galleys were despatched ahead July 26, under command of Don Pedro Alcarazo. On August 17, the chief part of the fleet, namely, the galleons and pataches, left port. Governor Don Juan Nino de Tabora was in the flagship; master-of-camp Don Lorenzo de Olaso in the almiranta; in the "Pena de Francia," Sargento-mayor Alonso Martin Quirante, an old and well-trying soldier; in the ship "Rosario," Captain Lazaro de Torres, a daring man in war; and in the other two pataches, two other captains. Each vessel carried a quantity of artillery, each galleon having more than forty very large pieces. There were many and very courageous men; although when they saw that contrary weather was setting in it did not fail to dishearten them, as was immediately seen. For scarcely had they left the port of Cavite (even before emerging from that bay), when so fierce a storm overtook them that the fleet was in danger of being wrecked. One patache sprang a leak, and commenced to take in water so badly that it was forced to make port and remain there. The governor—seeing that as the season was so late, it was quite possible that he could not get to the island of Hermosa and return to port with the fleet; and as quite a long period had passed since any reinforcement had been sent to our fort on the same island of Hermosa; and since he imagined that they were suffering very great need of everything necessary—in the probability of what might happen, determined to send Captain Lazaro de Torres ahead with his little vessel the "Rosario," which was carrying a large quantity of food. As it was a small, swift-sailing ship, he hoped that it would surely arrive, which was not looked for in regard to the rest of the fleet. We shall relate the experience of this vessel later.

Our fleet proceeded on its course, but with so contrary winds from the north that they [as it were,] consumed the vessels; and the seas ran mountain high toward the heavens, so that one would believe that they were trying to engulf them. They reached Cape Bojeador, although after considerable danger. That is the end of the island of Manila, where one crosses to the island of Hermosa. At that point the storms increased so violently that, a council of the pilots having been called, all thought that they should put in to port; for it was impossible to go any farther until the next year, when the expedition could be undertaken at a better season. They put back, and the fleet reentered Cavite on September 6. That was considered as not a little [good fortune by the Dutch]; for, as was afterward learned from some Dutchmen, whom the Portuguese of Macan captured, the enemy on the island of Hermosa were very weak and determined not to fight, but to leave their fort at the arrival of our fleet. Now the Dutch will be in a state of readiness, so that it will cost a triumph to capture the fort; and, even, may it please God that we can gain such a result.

Page 82

Some fathers of St. Dominic and of our Society were going in the fleet with the intention of remaining in the island of Hermosa, in order to engage in the conversion of its natives who are heathen. As servants of our fathers were also going two disguised Japanese fathers, in order to see whether they might go to Japon by way of the island of Hermosa. Their provincial had sent them for that purpose from Macan; for, as the door of Japon is so tightly closed, Ours seek extraordinary means to enter there, to aid that afflicted Christian people.

But let us return to follow our galleys. One can well guess how they would fare, when so large galleons suffered from the storm. They were struck very severely, but they made their voyage nevertheless, until they sighted the fort of the Dutch enemy on the island of Hermosa. From there, they put back to this island of Manila, in the province of Ylocos, because of the violence of the weather. While in port there, they had so fierce a storm that, having been hardly used by the past storm, their seams opened and they went to the bottom. Twenty convicts were drowned, and three Spaniards. The other men, even the commander himself, got away by swimming, and, as the land was near, they were able to reach it without much difficulty. That disastrous news reached this city October 20.

We come now to the ship "Rosario" in which Captain Lazaro de Torres was sailing. It made its voyage, although not without trouble. It reached our fort on the island of Hermosa, and its arrival gladdened and rejoiced our men greatly, for they were in great need of food. It had been more than a year since aid had been sent to them from Manila. At the ship's arrival, it was found that a disaster had overtaken our men. It happened that there was a chief on the river of Tanchuy, not far from our fort, who professed great friendship for our men for his reasons of state, which are not wanting even among barbarians. Those reasons were that that chief had wars of long standing with another chief whose domain was on the other side of the river; and he wished to have our men on his side, for whatever might happen. Our men trusting to his friendship, and forced by the necessity that they were suffering, the commander sent Captain Don Antonio de Vera with twenty Spaniards to the said river of Tanchuy to bring back rice to our men; for that is the ordinary bread, and that country abounds plentifully with it. Captain Antonio de Vera and his twenty Spaniards remained one or two months with the chief of Tanchuy, who, although he feasted them, did not conclude by giving them the provisions to return. The captain began to fear some detention, and sent to our fort for more men, in order to negotiate with arquebuses what they were unable to compass by kindness; but these were not sent. The chief concerted secretly with his opponent, and made peace with him. One day he took Captain Don Antonio and the other Spaniards out



Page 83

hunting; and suddenly attacked them, and killed the said captain and seven others. They first sold their lives, and with greed for death itself, killed some of their false friends, really their enemies—among them the very chief who contrived that treachery. The other Spaniards sought shelter in a small boat which they had there, left the river, and went to our fort, giving news of the disaster just as Captain Lazaro de Torres arrived. With the help that had just come to them, they determined to take vengeance for that perfidy. The commandant sent the said captain, Lazaro de Torres, with one of the galleys which they had there, accompanied by one hundred infantrymen. They entered the river of Tanchuy, which is very beautiful, and densely inhabited by the natives. The latter immediately deserted their settlements, and our men went to the rice granaries, and filled their galley and four large champans, which are used as freight ships in these seas. They could have filled fifty if they had had them, so great is the abundance in that country. They captured I know not how many persons; then without doing any more evil or burning their villages, they retired with plenty of food, which was the most important thing. This feat having been performed, the said Lazaro de Torres returned with his ship to Manila, where he entered February 21, 1628.

On the same day that our fleet reached the port of Cavite, which was, as aforesaid, September 6, 1627, a *cho* (a craft which is used in these waters, whose sails are made of rushes) came from Macan. It warned the Portuguese galliots which had come from that city to this with great wealth of merchandise, and which were about to return with about one million in silver, that they should take note that the Dutch enemy were stationed in the passage of Macan, awaiting them with four ships in order to capture them, and that they should change their direction and course. Thereupon, Governor Don Juan Nino de Tabora, seeing that our fleet was ready, and that it would be a fine thing to effect some stroke with the Dutch, as well as for other ends which will be told later, resolved to send two galleons, to act as escort to the Macan galliots. The Portuguese gave twenty thousand pesos to help the soldiers. On October 13 the said galliots, five in number, left with the flagship "San Yldefonse," in which Don Juan de Alcarazo went as commander; in the other galleon, the "Pena de Francia," Don Pedro de Mendiola went as commander. Each galleon carried about six hundred persons. They were so well equipped that they could fight with any Dutch ships whatever. Father Ygnacio de Muxica of our Society, and a brother, were in the flagship, and a father of St. Francis in the other galleon. Both galleons suffered great troubles from whirlwinds, seas, and storms all the way to Macan. One day our flagship snapped the topmast of its mainmast and it fell down. Another day the mast sprang, and knocked the rudder out of



Page 84

place, and it had to be repaired. Another day they were all but wrecked on the reefs of La Plata. On another occasion they lost their rudder completely, and they had to steer the ship with the sheets of the mizzenmast; on another, they lost their anchors while quite near Macan. They grounded in two and one-half brazas of water, and had not the bottom been sandy they would have been smashed into a thousand pieces. They cut down the mainmast and lightened the ship, and got it out of the sand after the greatest of toil, for it was almost buried. The other galleon had its troubles too, but it was fortunate in making port at Sanchuan on the Chinese coast, where our father St. Francis Javier died, about thirty leguas from Macan. The galliots entered the latter place safely, for the Dutch ships were no longer in the strait, as I shall recount later in order not to interrupt at present the thread of our history of our galleons and their adventures. The latter were very ill received by the Portuguese because of the twenty thousand pesos which they cost, and because it was seen that the Dutch had deserted the strait. They judged the matter by the effect and not by what might have happened had the enemy captured their galliots with so great a sum of silver. Our galleons stayed more than three months at that place refitting, stepping a mast and replacing the rudder, and getting food in Macan. They bought a patache, of which they had great need. On the eighteenth of February the two galleons and patache sailed out to pursue their voyage. The latter was sent by the commander, Don Juan Alcarazo, to take its station in the bay of the kingdom of Tonquin and Cochinchina, in order to await a ship from Siam of which it should make a prize; and then to go with it in search of the two galleons. The fact is that they had an order from Governor Don Juan Nino de Tabora to capture all the Siamese vessels for reprisal, inasmuch as five years ago a ship was taken from us in that kingdom, although it was friendly to us. The ship was said to be valued at one million in merchandise, and was on its way from Macan to Manila. Several Spaniards were killed. An embassy having been sent under Father Pedro de Morejon, as I wrote in another relation, the Siamese returned to us only the value of ten thousand pesos.

That patache, whose captain was Diego Lopez Lobo, a Portuguese, and which carried thirty Spaniards, waited two months in the said place, sailing about hither and thither. When the king of Cochinchina saw it, fearing lest it capture some vessels that he was expecting in his kingdom, he sent a father of the Society (one of those who reside in his court and other places, who I think are sixteen in number) in a small ship to tell the captain not to do any harm to anything belonging to his kingdom, and that he had always been a friend to us. Answer was returned that the presence of the ship in that region was not to do harm to Cochinchina, but to attain certain



Page 85

purposes which his captain-general had ordered him. Finally, on Thursday, the twentieth of April, a great freight ship was sighted, one of the sort that sail these seas. The Spaniards attacked it, and although its occupants tried to defend themselves, they were obliged to see that they had no defense against our artillery and musketry. They surrendered, and it was found to be the ship which was being sought. It was one which the king of Siam sends every year to Canton with some tribute for the king of China. It was returning with great wealth of silks and other things, and carried sixty Siamese and sixty Chinese. Half of the men were placed aboard our patache, and soldiers were transferred from the patache to the said Siamese ship. The strict vigilance necessary was maintained, as our men were so few, so that they should not be killed some night. The patache set out in search of the galleons, in the direction that had been set. But the winds were contrary in that direction, and they were unable to make any distance. Consequently, they had to sail with a stern wind to Manila. With their captured reprisal they reached this city on May 14. The cargo of the Siamese ship was unladed carefully, and it was found that it was worth about one hundred thousand pesos. It was placed on deposit in a building and excellent treatment is being given to the Siamese. But I think that they will be sent to their king, so that he may return us what he took from us, in which case we shall return what we captured from him. If that is not done, then we shall continue to capture their ships.

When the two galleons left Manila, the governor offered to send a patache after them to a certain place, and did so a little later; it was under command of Don Fernando Becerra, with about sixty men. They had bad weather. They looked for our galleons, and although they found traces of their having been in certain parts, they did not find the vessels. They only found a fine ship which was well equipped with artillery, and, thinking it to be one of our galleons, drew near it. But when quite near they saw that it was a Dutch ship, and consequently began to retire in all haste. The ship followed our patache, but as the latter was as swift as a bird it made so much headway in a short time that the ship abandoned the chase in despair. Our patache continued to retire toward Manila, where it arrived June 6, having lost fifteen men, who died of sickness, among them a Franciscan religious who was aboard. Consequently, our galleons were left without any patache, for one patache came in with the Siamese ship and the other did not find them. That was a matter of considerable damage; for, as the galleons were so large, they drew much water, and could not well go close to the shore in order to secure the desired results—as we shall see during the course of their voyage, which was as follows.



Page 86

As soon as they left the patache in the said passage for the purpose of capturing the Siamese ship, they ran along the whole coast of Asia until they reached the island of Hainam, where the fishery of Great China is located, a place most plentifully supplied with food. They went to the kingdom of Champa, and anchored at Pulo Condor, where they sent out their lanchas with forty Spaniards, and about twenty Indians and negroes, to see whether they could get the water which was very necessary to them. In the meantime the galleons kept moving about on one tack or another; but they were overtaken by so violent a storm that they had to go to another island called Pulo Ubi, leaving the lanchas with their men ashore, and as yet nothing has been heard of the latter. But it is thought that they are in Camboja, for that king is friendly to us, and will have welcomed them, as they were only eight leguas from the bar of Camboja. [43] Thus the galleons were left without pataches or lanchas. They went to Pulo to land at the kingdom of Pan, where they anchored and got water; and they took food from the inhabitants of the country until the latter arose against and wounded some of our men. But our men killed some of them, among them a nephew of the king of Pan himself. The Spaniards took away two boats from them, from which they made boats such as we use. While at that place, a ship manned by Chinese and Malays was captured. They were coming with flags and passports from the Dutch, with whom they were trading. They were captured on that account, although they had nothing of any value, for they had left their merchandise in the kingdom of Pan. It was heard that there were Dutch ships in the strait of Malaca, which were committing depredations. The Spaniards sent a lancha manned by soldiers and an adjutant, to reconnoiter; but after spying carefully until they were quite near Malaca, no Dutch were discovered, and they returned to the galleons with that news. While they were there, the king of Pan wrote in very complimentary manner to our commander, and, not saying that he knew of the death of his nephew, offered our men everything that they needed, so great fear had seized him. A lancha was sent to the kingdom of Patani to see whether there was a Dutch factory there, as was usual. Two Javanese were brought back, who said that two years ago, when that kingdom was in power, they had driven the Dutch from that place. They had a great quantity of pepper (which is the product yielded by that kingdom), for there was no one to whom to sell it, as they had sold it to the Dutch before. The commander wrote to them to have their men take a load of it to Manila, and that it would be bought from them; and also that he would give them indemnity for a slight injury which some of his men had done them, not knowing that they were friends, by taking a small quantity of rice from them, which the fleet and those who brought it needed. The men fled, without giving any account of themselves.



Page 87

The galleons went to the coasts of Ligor and Siam, and discovered three *somas*, freight ships of these seas. The lanchas attacked them; and, while fighting with them, fire was set to two jars of powder that the Spaniards had there. Twelve persons were burned, seven of whom died. Thereupon they retired, and the *somas* escaped. Afterward three other *somas* were discovered, which were coming from Siam. The lanchas were sent after them and defeated them, and brought them to the galleons. They were carrying as merchandise, rice, considerable pepper, and some cloth. The last named was much needed by the infantry, who already had rib shirts on account of the long voyage. The galleons entered the bay of Siam, and found three *somas* on the bar. One was Japanese, and carried drugs and merchandise. It was captured in good faith, but the justification of this act is being discussed. It is thought that the Japanese will be remunerated for the injury received, as they ought not to have been harmed.

Another of the *somas* belonged to the Siamese king, and was being laden to go to China for the purpose of trading lead, ivory, silver, leather, *etc.* As they were unable to get it outside of the bar, for it was very large and needed the high tide, they set fire to it and took the Siamese to the galleons. That would have been a prize or reprisal of importance had it been captured, and not burned. Then another Siamese *soma* laden with pepper and tin was captured, and a reprisal was made of it. The galleons returned, reconnoitering all those ports, to see whether there were any Dutch in them. Although they did not find any, they left those kingdoms in terror, for although our galleons were very large, report made them much greater. Rumor said that each one contained more than one thousand men, and pieces of vast size, which fear magnified greatly. Finally, the two galleons returned to port on the thirteenth of June after an eight months' voyage, with the death of more than forty men. The galleon "Pena de Francia" had many sick men, but only one man had died in the flagship; and he had died in port, as he was sick when he had embarked. The chief cause was the great care taken of the sick. That was attended to chiefly by the father and brother of our Society who were in the said flagship. Thus they all arrived safe and sound and happy, and all this city was joyful over their return. [44]

I said above that when our galleons arrived at Macan with the galliots they did not find the Dutch ships, and I said that I would tell why; and I shall do so now, before passing on. While the Chinese of Macan were awaiting the ships from Yndia, and thinking of making the usual voyage to Japon with four ships which they had already prepared, two ships and a patache and a galliot of the Dutch came in sight of the city, on July 21. The larger ship and the galliot stationed themselves in an entrance where the galliots from India enter and those for Japon leave. The other



Page 88

smaller ship and the patache took the other entrance, where the vessels that sail from Manila and other places enter. The design of the Dutch was to capture the vessels en route from Yndia, Filipinas, and other kingdoms; and to prevent the voyage to Japon, which forms the chief gain of the city of Macan. The people, seeing their affliction—and that a galliot en route from Yndia had escaped the enemy as by a miracle, and entered the city safely; and that they had scarcely been able to despatch to Japon one of the ships which they had prepared, at great risk of the Dutch capturing it, which the latter made all possible efforts to do—set about preparing a small fleet of merchant vessels to see whether they could lure away some vessel of the enemy, and attack and capture it. Five ships and six chos were prepared, the latter weak vessels which sail the Chinese seas. Artillery was mounted in them which could not have been very large, for the ships were not very large or strong. Commanders were appointed for all of them. A father of our Society embarked in each one for the expedition. In short, everything was prepared with the efficient care and solicitude of the chief captain of Macan, Don Felipe Lobo, who was governing that city. It only remained to assign the chief commander of all, over which there was great strife, for all wished to command and no one to obey. Consequently, one thing was resolved upon, which except among the Portuguese of Yndia, where there is so little practice in war or military knowledge, could not pass, and will cause laughter to whoever reads it—namely, that each one of the commanders of the ships should have command for his day, and should be superior of the others. They were to begin by lot, and he who should get the first lot was to have command the first day, and he the second who should get the second lot, and so one with the others, until the five days were finished. Then they were to take command again in the same way. They left port and found that the flagship of the Dutch was alone; for the galliot which accompanied it had gone to Japon, and the other ship with the patache had gone to their fort on the island of Hermosa. The Portuguese attacked the ship with great energy and valor, although with little plan, and defeated it. The Dutch captain-general, who was a circumspect man, by name Nicholas Cadem, sailed out to seek a hot engagement, and was killed. Thereupon the Dutch boldly set fire to the powder-barrels and blew up a great part of the ship, many of the Dutch jumping into the water. They were picked up by the Portuguese and taken into their ships. Twelve men of the Portuguese were killed and twenty-seven of the Dutch, while some thirty odd were captured. The half-burnt ship of the enemy was taken to Macan. They captured fourteen pieces of artillery in it and more than one thousand balls and other weapons. It was a pity that that ship was burned, for it was very fine and was well built. It was covered and lined with leather and sheets of lead. However, it is said that it will be of use if repaired. That victory happened on August 25, 1627. Consequently, when our galleons arrived with the galliots, the sea was already cleared of the enemy.

Page 89

Since we do not find a port of China in Macan it will be right for us to enter the interior, and we shall tell what is passing [there] in the spiritual and temporal. Christianity continues to increase. There are twenty-two members of the Society in all China, established at the court of Pequin and other chief cities. Ours go about there with more liberty and publicity than they have ever done. Happy times are expected if the uncle of the king who is now reigning enters into the kingdom, as is heard, and if the king is held in guardianship, as he is a boy. The latter succeeded his brother who died. [45] Immediately upon entering his kingdom, he exiled from his court a eunuch, a prime favorite of his brother, who had command of everything and even played the tyrant; he also exiled other favorites. The seas of that kingdom of China are infested with pirates from China itself, and they are so numerous that it is said that there are more than a thousand ships of them. They pillage everything and infest all places, and have sacked and burned many maritime places of that great kingdom. They have been the cause this year of very few ships coming to these islands to trade; for the mandarins have put an embargo on all ships, in order to build a large fleet to oppose the said pirates. A large stone was found in the interior of China with Chinese and some Chaldean characters, which tell how preachers of the gospel came to China a thousand years ago and preached the gospel. They had bishops, and many churches and Christians, and the mysteries of our faith were established there. As it is a long matter I shall not relate it here, but shall only say that after having examined the circumstances, it appears to be true, without ground for doubt of it. [46]

Father Juan Adan, of the Society of Jesus, wrote the following. He lives in Pequin.

“The affairs of this kingdom of China are in a condition of perfect peace. A rumor was current many days ago that the Tartar king, the fear of this empire, was dead. [47] As he had many sons, and had conquered many lands from his other neighbors, the sons will be kept quite busy for some few years in coming to terms with one another, and in dividing and maintaining what their aged father left them. A few days ago, a mandarin related to Father Nicolas Longobardo [48] that he had seen in the palace an image of a woman with two small boys and an old man. It must be David who was playing the harp for them. It is not an idol of the Chinese, for the image is about a thousand years old, and was a present from foreigners in the time of Tam-Chao, when our holy law entered China, as your Reverence will already know from the stone which was found, and the painting of the old man on linen, a figure which resembles us. This point needs investigation, in order that we may know what it is with greater certainty.” The father continues, making mention of an earthquake that happened in China.



Page 90

Let us return to the island of Hermosa, whence a boat came on March 13, with the news that a great mandarin had come from China to our fort, to ascertain what people they had recently received as neighbors. I will briefly state the reason for his coming. A Chinaman bribed by the Dutch took certain memoranda to the mandarins, in which a thousand evil things were said of the Spaniards (namely, that they were certain robbers), while the Dutch were praised—all with the object that trade be forbidden with Manila, and opened with the Dutch, which is the thing that they have always been trying to do, and to which the Chinese have always been opposed. Another Chinaman was not wanting who took up the matter on his own account, and said: “The Dutch who pillage those kingdoms, and are rebels to their king, are rather the robbers and pirates, and not the Spaniards, who are good men; with them we trade in Manila, and they do not constrain us except by many very good works.” Upon seeing that, the viceroy of the maritime provinces sent the said mandarin to the new port which we had occupied in the island of Hermosa, to examine and investigate what kind of people we were, and what were our purposes in making a settlement so near China. The mandarin was very cordially received by the commandant of the island of Hermosa, Antonio Carreno de Valdes, who regaled him and made much of him, and gave him a fine present at his departure. He told the mandarin that our intentions were good, and that we did not intend to harm China, but rather to aid them by punishing the pirates who infested those seas. The mandarin was despatched, but put back once and twice to the fort. He was received well each time and well treated by the said commandant. He put back the third time, and for shame refused to return to our fort, but anchored not far from it; there the natives cut his moorings one night, and, drawing the ship to land, entered it and pillaged whatever they wished, and treated the mandarin with contumely. In the morning, when the commandant got wind of the affair, he sent a troop of soldiers. Attacking the natives with orders not to kill them (for the soldiers shot their bullets into the sky), they captured some chiefs. Thereupon, the chiefs restored to the Chinese mandarin what they had pillaged from him; and, in order to regain their liberty, handed over to us their sons as hostages, who are being reared in our fort. Thereupon the mandarin was sent away, very thankful. An account of all this affair was sent to Manila to the governor, who immediately despatched the father-provincial of St. Dominic—who knows the Chinese language, and has tried by various ways and means for many years to enter China, but never has been able to succeed. [49] This despatch seemed now to be a good means to him—I mean to the said father-provincial—so that in company with the said commandant of the island of Hermosa, they might go to the viceroy of the maritime provinces with a very rich present of silver, cloth, and other things. Those articles were sent for that purpose so that those provinces might make a treaty with our fort on the island of Hermosa, where the said father-provincial is preparing to go with the commandant on the embassy, the result of which I shall tell next year.



Page 91

The aid of food and ammunition was sent to the forts which we have in the Malucas Islands this year, as usual. Three pataches went, under the command of a valiant soldier, Captain Francisco Hernandez. The Dutch had received a very large and well-equipped ship, with which they were waiting to capture our relief expedition. The two pataches easily escaped, and sought the protection of our forts. But the ship in which the said Captain Francisco Hernandez was, seeing that it could not escape, courageously went to attack the [Dutch] ship. When that was seen from our fort of Terrenate, the galley was despatched to the aid of our ship. The latter grappled with the hostile vessel and fought so courageously, that its men were about to enter the latter, when, the Dutch firing a piece, it struck in the powder which had been brought up on deck for the fight. Thereupon our vessel caught fire, and the men took to the water, and reached the shore, which was near, by swimming. The galley, which through fear of the powder of our ship which was blown up, had approached very near the enemy's ship, was capsized by all the men going to one side. Consequently, all its men took to the water in order to escape by swimming. Thus the enemy were victorious, although more of their men were killed than of ours. They tried to take the galley, notwithstanding its condition, but it sank in a few moments. That was a great misfortune. The enemy were triumphant, and made much ado about the outcome.

The Camucones are certain robbers who live on the sea, and constantly infest our seas of Filipinas; they came this year, as they have done in others. A small fleet of our caracoas—vessels that look like galleys, although they are smaller and weaker—went out to attack them from the island of Oton. Our vessels captured three of the enemy's caracoas, while four others grounded on the beach. The latter were burned by our Indians, and the Camucones who disembarked were killed. Therefore, we are free from that canaille for this year, and they have done us but little harm. A large hostile caracoa was discovered on the coast of the city of Cebu. The Spaniards went out to it and, having overtaken it, its people instead of surrendering and delivering up themselves, received our men with a volley of stones which they cast from certain slings, and showers of spears. When our men saw that the enemy would not easily come to terms, they attacked and killed them. Only six of them were left alive, who with the prize and boat were taken to the said city of Cebu, where the attempt was made to ascertain their purpose and from what land they came. But it was impossible to ascertain anything, for they understood none of the languages spoken here, although there are so many. They were thought to be people who had been blown from some island. [50] They were naked, and had no firearms, nor even weapons of iron. Their ship had no nails, and a chisel that was found was made of bone. They ate lice with a good grace—by that propensity, being people of good taste. Some thought them to be from an island more distant than Borney; for the inhabitants of that island eat lice, and the fat ones with especial liking.



Page 92

The governor established a shipyard this year in the province of Camarines—which is a part of this island of Manila—in order to build a couple of galleons, two or three galleys, and a like number of brigantines, for there was need of all. For that purpose he sent some Spaniards, and a number of Chinese and Indians, to build the ships; a considerable quantity of iron for nails, much rice for food, four pieces of artillery to garrison themselves, and, in short, all that was necessary. They settled at the said place and began their building. The king of Jolo left his island, which was subject and tributary for a long time, and it was years since he was rebellious. He went out with two thousand men, in more than thirty caracoas, which are called *joangas* when they are large. He came among our islands, and first captured from us a ship and a quantity of iron (which is an article that they esteem highly). They also captured balls, fuses, and all that the ship was carrying to the shipyard. Then they captured another ship from us with sixty Indians and two Spaniards, who were going to cut wood for the building of the ships. They had interpreters, and found out where the shipyard was located. They went there before dawn, landed seven hundred well-armed men, and commenced to kill and rob. The Spaniards were quite off their guard, and had not fortified themselves and mounted the artillery, as they ought to have done. They quickly seized their arms, and began to fire their arquebuses. The enemy first killed for us two of our Spaniards, whereupon only twelve Spaniards were left. Of the other men the enemy took no account, for many were already captured or killed. Some tried to flee, and some sought the shelter of our arquebuses in a storehouse where the provisions were kept, where the Spaniards had retired, and where they remained fighting, because of their few number, until shortly after midday. By that time five of them were wounded, and only seven were left who could fight. They ran short of ammunition and fuses, because the enemy had taken them, as I have said. Thereupon, they resolved to embark in a large boat which they had, back of the said storehouse on a river, his Majesty's silver, all the arms, the women and children, and the other Indians who had taken shelter there. Immediately the twelve Spaniards, both the wounded and the sound, embarked, and went up the river. Therefore, the camp was left to the king of Jolo and his men. They remained there for some days, eating and drinking as if in their own homes. They embarked the four pieces of artillery which our men could not take, and collected all the iron that they could load into their ships; and even then they did not take all that there was, for there was much of it. Consequently, they left a great part of it ashore. They robbed many things of value, and a great quantity of rice which they found—a matter of about one thousand fanegas—they scattered and threw into the sea, for they had no need of it.



Page 93

They killed and captured many, and among them a Spanish woman, and thereupon they retired triumphant. However they were surprised that so few Castilians, as they say, made front for so long against so many of their men. The king left a letter for the governor; and one of the seigniors of Europa could not apparently write more prudently or in more just manner. He said in the letter that he had made that demonstration because a chief of his named Achen, having been sent as ambassador to Manila, had been ill-treated here. He had been thrust into prison and his possessions taken away from him, among them three exceedingly beautiful pearls of extraordinary size, such as are obtained in that kingdom and island. It is a fact that all the above was done to his ambassador Achen; but the reason for it was because, after he had been honorably despatched from Manila in order that he might return to his country, he sailed out with his vessel, which resembled a beautiful small galley, pillaging all whom he met. Consequently, men were sent against him; and they captured him on his way and took him to Manila, where they took away his possessions and imprisoned him. Although they might have hanged him, they did not do so, but despatched him to his country once more. He returned thence for the second time as ambassador, with a very haughty and arrogant message. They sent him away, and he went to the limits of these Filipinas Islands; and as soon as he thought that he would be safe, began to pillage, and took refuge [with his allies]. Accordingly the king of Jolo was ill informed in what he wrote. The latter, on leaving the shipyard, attacked another of our islands, called Bantayan, where he was resisted by three Spaniards and one secular priest with arquebuses, until their powder was gone. That happened during the night; and then the Spaniards and the ecclesiastic retired, whereupon the Joloans landed. Inasmuch as the island abounds in certain large thorns, which form its greatest defense against a barefooted enemy, such as are the Joloans, they wore as a protection certain wooden shoes resembling coarse leather sandals [*abarca*] with which they landed. They captured many of the natives. Then they attacked Ogonuc, a village in charge of the fathers of the Society, and pillaged it, as well as what our house and church contained, even to the bells. The father was not there, and so they did not capture him. The enemy took heavy spoils in everything; but, what was a cause for greater pain, they captured more than three hundred Indians. They sell them as slaves to heathen kingdoms, and in the end the slaves become like the masters. While the above was happening, as report of it had already gone forth, the commandant of Cebu and lieutenant of the captain-general, Christobal de Lugo, prepared his fleet of caracoas, in order to go out to engage the enemy and take away their booty. He sailed out and sighted the enemy at two in the afternoon. The enemy, seeing him, began to flee; and in order

Page 94

to do so with greater freedom, abandoned astern some eight small boats—a matter of small importance. Our fleet continued to pursue them, but they put so much strength into their rowing that they distanced our men. Their craft are extremely swift, and have two prows, so that it is unnecessary to turn about in order to flee. The night descended, and the enemy escaped, to the great grief of our men. They, seeing the so great disaster that was happening to us, and that the enemy had gone away making a jest of us, sent Father Fabricio Sarsali of our Society from the city of Cebu with orders to go to Manila to inform the governor, and get permission from him to go to seek the enemy in their own country. For that purpose they needed food, some silver, and some soldiers, besides those that they had there. The father came, negotiated successfully, and all that he requested was given him; and they were ordered to go to punish the Joloan enemy. However they were not to approach a strong fort that the Joloans had on a hill on top of a steep rock, as that was a very dangerous undertaking, where twice in former years the Spaniards had been defeated. Accordingly, the capture of that fort required a greater force and a more favorable opportunity. The father returned with his despatch. The caracoas of the island of Oton and those of Cebu were prepared, which formed, as it were, two squadrons. Many other caracoas of volunteer Indian chiefs joined them, so that all together they numbered thirty or forty. About two hundred Spaniards and more than one thousand six hundred Indians embarked in them. On April 22, they reached the beach of the island of Jolo. At one o'clock of the day, the commander landed one hundred Spaniards and a number of Indians, leaving the other men behind for the defense of the fleet so that it might come to no hurt. They espied a flourishing settlement, of which they had hitherto had no information; for the king and his men live on top of the hill, for greater safety. But, being desirous of enjoying trade and commerce with other kingdoms, they had built that city. Between it and us was the river. Seeing that this matter was one of quickness and determination, they immediately crossed the river, part in boats, but the majority in water up to their waists. They attacked the settlement, and although the Joloans tried to resist, they were unable; accordingly, they retired, and our men entered the settlement and sacked it. It contained quantities of gold, cloth, and other things, especially in the palaces of the king, which were very rich and beautiful, and curiously carved, as was also the mosque. That island is inhabited by Moros. Our men captured three versos and two falcons, one hundred and fifty muskets and arquebuses, and a flag which the enemy had captured from us in the shipyard. They esteemed the flag very highly, as they had captured it from Spaniards. The Spaniards set fire to the settlement and to a village of Lutaos, who are fishermen, as

Page 95

well as to the alcaiceria which the Chinese had there. Everything was burned, including a very large supply of rice which they had gathered, and which will cause them great want. A quantity of powder and sulphur was also burned, besides more than sixty joangas. These were the ships of their fleet, in which they went out to pillage, using besides more than a hundred other small craft, which also were broken up and burned; so that not a single ship was left to them. Then the Spaniards looked for the tombs of the kings, in accordance with the order given from Manila by the governor. The tombs are highly esteemed by the Joloans. They found three wonderful and splendid ones, especially one of them, which was the one for the present king. They also burned these, although the Joloans tried to prevent them. All this was accomplished in the same afternoon when much of the fleet arrived; the men then retired to their ships. Next day, which was Easter Sunday, the Spaniards heard that at a certain point there was a large joanga belonging to the same king, and three versos. Again they disembarked and burned the said joanga and captured the versos. Upon all these occasions the captain-general was the first to disembark, the last to enter the vessel, and the first in all places where they went. With him went Father Fabricio Sarsali, with a banner on which was an image of our father St Francis Javier, who had been taken as patron of that expedition.

After all that had been accomplished, the commander, Don Cristobal de Lugo, sent a letter to the king which had been sent him from Manila by the governor, in reply to that which the king had written him. The governor had ordered that the letter should not be sent until after the punishment had been accomplished. The king replied, as the senate of Venecia might have done, with more courtesies and reasons of state. For writing it he employed as secretary the Spanish woman whom he had captured at the shipyard, who is named Dona Lucia, of whom he is very fond. Consequently, although the Spanish commander tried to ransom her and offered as much as six hundred pesos for her, the king would not surrender her—answering that it was not consistent with his greatness to give her up for money; but that he would send her freely, if they would give him in recompense the falcons and versos which they had captured from him, and one of the slave women who was in our power. The slave woman was sent him, but not the artillery, and a fine thing it would have been to arm the enemy to ransom one woman. Thus did she remain in their power, but made half a queen. Some of the enemy were killed, and others captured. Some of those whom the king had captured from us came to us, but not all, for most of them had been sold in other kingdoms. Great was the booty, and the Indians who went on that expedition were rich and eager for other expeditions. Not a single one of our men was killed or wounded. Thus all of them returned to embark, laden with spoils



Page 96

and happy. The enemy were left chastised and ruined for many years. Then our fleet went to another island near there, called Taguima, whose inhabitants went out to pillage with the Joloans. They had already been advised, and accordingly fled to the mountains. Our men landed, and burned a large village, in which there was nothing but common things. They laid waste all the palm-trees, and did them all the damage possible. Then the fleet went to the island of Mindanao. A letter was despatched from the port of La Caldera to the sultan of that island, notifying him to come to see our commander, but he refused to do so, and made excuses; but the truth was, that he was afraid. He sent an ambassador and wrote a letter to the governor of Manila, in which he begged for fathers of the Society and one hundred infantrymen to build a fort (which is the thing that we desire), from which to destroy the Joloans, who are also his enemy at present.

A great portion of the province of Cagayan, which is located in this island of Manila, has been in revolt for some years. An extensive raid was made this year by our Spaniards and two thousand friendly Indians. Some of the enemy were killed, and eight villages burned. The country was laid waste, with the fields that the enemy had there; and thus were they punished for the insolent acts that they had committed. Consequently, these islands have four wars on the tapis at present: in the island of Hermosa, with the natives and the Dutch; in Terrenate and the Malucas Islands, with the Dutch also; in Jolo and other near-by islands whose inhabitants infest our seas; and in Cagayan with the insurgents. For so much war we must have greater aid from Espana and Nueva Espana, so that the condition of these islands may not fall lower.

I will conclude this relation with the fires that we have experienced this year, which have been many and important.

The convent of St. Francis, the hospital, and other houses were burned in Maluco. The convent of St. Nicolas (which belongs to the Recollects) in Cebu was burned March 29; and that of St. Augustine and a great portion of the city on April 8. It was a miracle that our residence escaped, for the fire was near it.

Fire caught, at one o'clock at night on March 13, in the Parian or alcaiceria of the Chinese, where more than twelve thousand Chinese live, outside the walls of this city of Manila. Inside of five hours it was all leveled. It naturally seems impossible that so large a settlement, with wooden pillars which two men could not encircle, could have burned in so short a time. But that must have been the fire and punishment of heaven for the so horrible sins by which those heathen Chinese have provoked the wrath of God. The church and convent of St. Dominic, which is one of the most splendid wooden buildings that there can be, escaped from the midst of this fire of Sodom. A house owned there by the Society, which was even yet unfinished, was also unburnt.



Page 97

All the rest was burned to the very foundations. The inhabitants of Manila, who owned many of the houses, lost considerable in that fire. But in the space of four months, most of that alcaiceria has been rebuilt in squares and straight streets and uniform houses. It presents a very beautiful appearance, and is as large as the city of Manila itself. It is no wonder that a city should be built entire in so short a time, when more than three thousand men have worked on it. I do not know whether there can be any other part of the world than Manila where there are so many workmen and so abundant materials.

[Volume i of the Ventura del Arco MSS. (Ayer library) contains the following synopsis of another relation for the years 1627-1628.]

Events in the Filipinas Islands from August, 1627, until June, 1628.

In August, 1627, Governor Don Juan Nino de Tabora left the bay of Manila with the fleet, going toward the island of Hermosa in order to drive away the Dutch who had established themselves there two years before the Spaniards.

The fleet sailed out of season, for the relief ships from Nueva Espana arrived a month later than they ought. Accordingly, the fleet encountered northerly winds when they reached Cape Bojeador. They remained there for some days, beating to windward, until after several storms they had to put back to Manila.

The galleys joined the fleet at Bangui, which is located at the same cape. The smaller vessels, not being able to withstand the weather, became separated from the fleet; and one of them, with the heavy storm that overtook them, ended its voyage at a port of China, in the province of Fo-chiu, and another at the island of Hermosa. The galleys lost their moorings at Bangui, where the earth and even the sea trembled fourteen times in one day. Hills were toppled over; and one called Los Caraballos, which was on the road to Nueva Segovia, and was inaccessible, sank and became very level. Some of the convents of the Dominican religious (who instruct that province) fell. The hurricane wrecked immense numbers of trees, which covered the beaches of the sea. By the middle of September the weather moderated. The commander of the galleys, not knowing that the galleons had put back, continued his voyage, and reached the point on the island of Hermosa, and entered the Dutch port without knowing it. He went within cannon-shot, reconnoitered the port, and sounded the coast. He observed the fort, and the preparations made by the Dutch, who were fearful of some attack. Then he went to a small island inhabited by Chinese fishermen, who received him cordially; they expressed hatred for the Dutch, and their desire to aid the Spaniards to drive them from the island of Hermosa. They had some Dutch prisoners, who had been shipwrecked from a galleon that had been lost on their coasts, or on the reefs of the said island. The galleys sailed thence toward our port in the island of Hermosa, but so furious a north wind caught them, when near it, that they were carried to Cape Bojeador in five days;



and they were able to make the port called Japonés. There another storm struck them on the first of October, and the two galleys were smashed to pieces, although the artillery and men were saved.



Page 98

The ship that put in at Fo-chiu returned to the port of the island of Hermosa with whose infantry and that of another small patache, which had arrived before, and with some silver and clothing which it carried, the fort was relieved; and its garrison were able to punish, as they did, the Chinese who had killed two captains, with twenty-five or thirty Spaniards.

The governor, having returned to the bay of Manila with his galleons, was notified from Macao, before he had disembarked, that four Dutch vessels had been sighted, whose intention was to make prizes and prevent the commerce. He sent two galleons as a convoy for the Portuguese galleys of that port; but when they reached Macao the Dutch vessels were no longer there, the battle having already occurred which was referred to in the preceding document.

The two galleons having been freed [from the convoy] went—after suffering a severe storm in which they were nearly wrecked, from the effects of which they had to be repaired—in accordance with the orders of the governor, to scour all the coast as far as Malaca in pursuit of the Dutch. For that purpose they equipped a patache before leaving Macao, while another patache was despatched from Manila to join them. During the eight months while the voyage lasted, those four boats scoured all the places where the Dutch are accustomed to go, without omitting any save to enter Jacatra [51] itself. They went first to the island of Aynao [*i.e.*, Hainan], which has four cities, and is the pearl fishery of Great China. Then they skirted the coast of Cochinchina, where the king sent to request them, through a Spaniard who was there and the superior of the mission which the fathers of the Society have there, not to attack them, since he was our friend. They did not meddle with his possessions, but, before leaving the coast, captured a junk belonging to the king of Siam, which was coming from Canton laden with silks, earthenware, and tobacco, which was valued at more than fifty thousand ducados.

Between the islands of Pulo Condor and Puluibi, which are opposite the kingdom of Camboja, one of the two pataches met a very large Dutch ship, which it was thought was going to Siam, where the galleons were awaiting it. But it was not so, and it was believed to have gone to Japon.

The raid of the fleet, and especially of those galleons, was feared by all the kings of the coast and by those of Java and Borneo, and they desired peace with the Spaniards. Even the mandarin of Fo-chiu thought that the fleet was going to attack China, and ordered an agent to go to the island of Hermosa to find out about it.

The relief expedition sent to Maluco had the outcome mentioned in the preceding document.

During that year, the old king of Ternate died at Manila. He had been captured at the recovery of the Malucas. He was a Moro, of royal appearance and speech; and died in



the Moro belief, of which he had always been most observant. He thoroughly understood the teachings of our holy faith, and said that the only reason that he did not embrace it was because it was not fitting for a king to change his religion because he had been captured.



Page 99

This document refers to the invasion of the islands by the king of Jolo, in the same manner as the preceding document; and concludes by saying that after he had been punished, the Spaniards began to build three galleys, four brigantines, and forty large caracoas at the order of the governor; and that they must be preparing themselves to take vengeance on the Moros of Borneo, and the Camucones and Joloans, for the damages sustained from them during the preceding years.

REPORT OF APPOINTMENTS MADE BY GOVERNOR TAVORA

Sire:

Proceeding in conformity with what your Majesty orders me by royal decree, dated at Madrid on the twentieth of January, one thousand six hundred and twenty-five, and countersigned by Senor Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras, directing that I should send a relation of the places, offices, encomiendas, gratuities, incomes, allowances, additional pay, and whatsoever other advantages I might confer, making a special record for this; after having complied with this, and sent an account in the ships which left this island for Nueva Espana in the year six hundred and twenty-seven, I have thus far made appointments to the following encomiendas, places, and offices:

Captain Blas Lopez Baltadano was granted, in the name of your Majesty, the encomienda of natives at Agonoc and its dependencies in the province of Camarines, which was left vacant by the demise and death of Don Diego Arias Xiron; it contains four hundred and sixty tributary Indians, each one of them paying every year ten reals, two for the royal revenue, and the rest for the encomendero. Four reals of the latter are paid in kind—a hundred and ten gantas of rice in the husk, fit for sowing and cooking; and two fowls for one real; the rest being in money, of which two reals are paid to the minister who instructs them. This grant was extended to him in conformity with the law of succession, for services which he has rendered your Majesty during the twenty-eight years past while he has been in these islands, at first as a soldier in the company of Captain Juan de Laxara. He was in the expedition for the discovery of the province of Tuy, as an adventurer and head of the veteran soldiers. He was corregidor of Butuan, and afterward went to the coast of Caraga, against the natives of Mindanao, as commander of a caracoa which belonged to him; and likewise in other parts of Mindanao, where he burned six caracoas and protected and defended the natives of his jurisdiction. Later, while corregidor of Ybalon, he attended to furnishing provisions for the galleys which were sent there to await the ships from Nueva Espana, as the Dutch were there again. He spent therein a great deal of labor, as he was obliged to bring the supplies from another jurisdiction, since there were not sufficient in his own. Twice he was alcalde-mayor of Pangasinan, where he brought about the reduction of the rebellious



Page 100

Indians, through the wise counsels of war which he gave. A few of them were executed, and they surrendered and sued for peace. He was in the expedition which Governor Don Luis Perez das Marinas made to Camboxa, holding a captaincy and paying his own expenses. In the port of Pinal he performed great labors in seeking supplies and money for the troops of another fleet. At that time he was appointed royal alferes, and came out wounded in his left arm from an encounter which he had with the Portuguese of Macan, in attempting to capture their commander. After his arrival at this city, he was made captain of Spanish infantry in the said province of Pangasinan, and twice their commander-in-chief, beside being alcalde-mayor and corregidor of Butuan at two other times. During this time he performed other services, as appears from the documents which he presented before me. On the said encomienda there was levied and exacted from him fifty pesos of pension, each year, which are to be given and paid to Alferes Juan Gomez, these being a part of the hundred which he holds from the encomienda of Yguey and its dependencies, belonging to Captain Juan Bautista Perez de Helquera, in the said province of Camarines, by a grant which was made of that sum to the said Alferes Juan Gomez by the royal Audiencia of these islands, when their government was in its charge through the death of Governor Juan de Silva. The said fifty pesos are taken away from the said encomienda of Yguey that it may be free from them, as it has few tributarios; and I have imposed them upon this said encomienda so that the said Alferes Juan Gomez may enjoy them, conformably to the grant which was made him. The said Captain Baltadano must secure a confirmation of this grant from your Majesty inside of four years, reckoned from the day of sailing of the first ships which are despatched from these and the other islands for Nueva Espana—as is ordered by the royal decrees of the twelfth of October, six hundred and twelve, and the twelfth of July, six hundred and twenty-five, under the penalties therein provided. He must likewise send a special power of attorney to petition for the said confirmation, in the form which is provided by another decree dated at Madrid, the twenty-eighth of May, one thousand six hundred and twenty-five; and he must send and remit to that court [a statement of] the amount of his monthly income, when he sends for the said confirmation—in failure whereof the said confirmation will not be accorded him, as your Majesty commands by another decree of the eighth of June, one thousand six hundred and twenty-six. I sent him the commission on the twenty-ninth of October, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven, having previously posted notices in public places in the said city, for the benefit of those who might have claims on the said encomienda, as is ordered by another royal decree of the twenty-fifth of June, one thousand six hundred and twenty-six; and have found by investigation that it is not included in the royal decree which treats of the appointment to encomiendas and offices in the form which is therein provided.



Page 101

Captain Francisco de la Haya was granted the encomienda of natives at Lobo and Galban, and their dependencies, in the province of Balayan, which was vacated by the demise and death of Don Joseph Arnalte. It has three hundred and eighty-three tributarios, each one paying every year ten reals, two for the royal revenue, and eight for the encomendero. Four reals of these are in kind—sixty gantas of rice in the husk, fit for sowing and cooking; and one fowl for one real; and the other three reals in money, two of which are given to the minister who instructs them. If they are paid in white cotton blankets, of the ordinary size of three baras and a half in length and three quarters of a bara in width, these are to be counted at two reals apiece; and if they are of *soyol*, which are fine, at four reals; and if hand-worked for altar cloths, at five reals. The grant was made him in conformity with the law of succession, on account of his meritorious acts and services which he has rendered to your Majesty during the twenty-five years past, having enlisted as a soldier in those kingdoms, in the company of Captain Don Fernando de Silva. In that company he came to these islands, where he continued to serve, being present in such occasions for service as occurred. In particular he was present at the battle which was fought by Governor Don Juan de Silva against the Dutch enemy in Playa Honda, in the year six hundred and ten, where he received a wound, a musket-ball traversing his right thigh. Afterward he accompanied the said governor in the fleet which he took to the ports of Terrenate. He was at the capture of Sabugo. [52] He was alferes in the company of Captain Antonio de Morga. He was present with Governor Don Juan de Silva in the fleet which the latter took to the strait of Sincapura; and afterward was likewise in that of General Don Juan Ronquillo, who fought against the said Dutch at the said Playa Honda, he being present on the admiral's galley. He was a second time made alferes in this camp, and resigned from service in the infantry to embark in the fleet which Governor Don Alonso Fajardo prepared to oppose that of the Dutch, in the year six hundred and nineteen, where he served as a soldier in the company of Master-of-camp Don Geronimo de Silva. The next year he was in the fleet of General Don Luis Fajardo, for the protection of these coasts; and in the said position of soldier he served three years, one hundred and eighty-four days, until he was advanced to fill the place of adjutant sargento-mayor of this camp. Serving in this capacity, he went in the fleet which left in the year six hundred and twenty-five to oppose the Dutch who were upon this coast, having as commander the said Master-of-camp Don Hieronimo de Silva. Finally he was captain of infantry in this camp, and during this time has rendered other services, as appeared more at length by his papers which he presented before me. On the said encomienda there was levied and exacted from him fifty pesos



Page 102

of pension each year which were to be paid to Alferaz Juan Gomez, which are a part of the hundred which he holds as a pension from the encomienda of Ygüey and its dependencies, belonging to Captain Juan Baptista Perez de Helquerra, by a grant which was made to the said Alferaz Juan Gomez by the royal Audiencia of these islands, while the government was in its charge through the death of the said Governor Don Juan de Silva. I have taken the said fifty pesos from the encomienda of Ygüey, so that the said Captain Bautista Perez may be free therefrom, as the tributarios which he has are few; and I have imposed it upon this said encomienda so that the said Alferaz Juan Gomez may enjoy it, conformably to the grant which was made him. The said Captain Francisco de la Haya is bound to secure a confirmation thereof from your Majesty inside of four years reckoned from the day of sailing of the first vessels which are despatched from the islands for Nueva Espana, as is ordered by the said two royal decrees cited, and under the penalties there provided; and likewise he must send special power of attorney to petition for and secure the said confirmation; and when he shall send for it he must remit to that court the amount of his monthly income, failing which the said confirmation will not be given him, as is provided in the said royal decrees cited. I sent him the commission on the twenty-ninth of October, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven, having previously posted edicts in public places in this city for a reasonable length of time, for the benefit of those who may have claims on the said encomienda, as is ordered by another said royal decree cited. I have ascertained by investigation that it does not come under the provisions for the appointment to encomiendas and offices in the form therein provided.

Captain Pedro de Navarrete was granted the encomienda of natives in the villages of Tabuco and its subjects, in the province of La Laguna de Vay, which was vacated by the death of Captain Don Luis Enrriquez de Guzman. There are five hundred and two tributarios, each one of them paying every year ten reals, two for the royal treasury and eight for the encomendero. Four of these are paid in kind—fifty-five gantas of rice in the husk, half of which is cleaned for sowing and cooking; and one fowl at one real; and the other three in money. Of this the minister who teaches them is paid each year at the rate of a hundred pesos of eight reals, a hundred fanegas of rice in the husk, and one arroba of wine for the celebration of mass, for every five hundred tributarios to whom they minister. This grant was made to him for his merits, and the services which he has rendered your Majesty during more than twenty-five years since he came over to these islands with Governor Don Pedro de Acuna, in the capacity of a soldier in the company of Don Thomas Bravo de Acuna. He served in the said employment in this camp, and afterward went to the province of



Page 103

Zibu, in the Pintados, where he remained more than four years, connected with the company which was in Zibu, going out on all the armed expeditions which occurred—namely, six times, against the enemy from Mindanao, Caraga, and the Sanguiles, who were robbing and harrying those regions, causing much damage, death, and pillage. He was present at the taking of the fort of Sagao and the islands of Caraga, when the natives there rebelled, and refused obedience to the king. He was one of the soldiers who distinguished themselves, and climbed to the crest of the ridge, until it surrendered, and many Indians were captured, bringing the rebels back to the royal obedience. On this occasion he received a wound in the head, from the many stones which they threw. He served at his own expense and voluntarily, on the said occasions; and in the said garrison of Zibu he performed watch and sentinel duty with the other soldiers. He was present at the rebellion of the Japanese against this city outside of its walls, and was one of those who went out to fight against them in the year six hundred and eight, and in that of six hundred and sixteen. He was alferes of a Spanish company in this camp, and served in that capacity in the post at Cavite, for its protection and defense, when the Dutch had come with six ships to the harbor mouth of Mariveles, intending to enter the bay, at the time when Governor Don Juan de Silva had gone with his royal fleet to the strait of Sincapura. He was personally present on the rampart of the curtains of the said fort, which were breached at four points. He expended much of his property, maintaining therewith a number of soldiers of his company on account of the poverty of the royal treasury. In the year six hundred and eighteen, he was made captain of infantry of the company which was in garrison in the said fort of Cavite; and the next year he was made a second time captain of another company of this camp, where he served until it was disbanded. On many occasions when the royal treasury was embarrassed, he has lent it a great quantity of money. He is married to Dona Augustina de Morales, legitimate daughter of Captain Pedro Navarro and Dona Luisa de Morales, and granddaughter of Captain Gaspar Ruiz de Morales, one of the first conquerors and settlers of these islands, prominent people of rank. During this time he has rendered other services to your Majesty, all of which appears more at length from his papers which he has presented before me. Beside this, command is given by a royal decree dated at Madrid on the nineteenth of June, six hundred and twenty-six, countersigned by Senor Don Fernando Rruiz de Contreras, to the effect that in every possible way should be furthered the work for the protection and aid of orphan children and those lacking support, which was administered and managed by Brother Juan Geronimo Guerrero in this city, as that is so pious and charitable a cause, and it is so necessary to secure its perpetuity and



Page 104

the support of the said children, whose fathers have died in these islands in the royal service. As means were to be sought for this, since they could not come from the royal treasury, the said Captain Pedro de Navarrete, as one of the benefactors of the said work, offered and bound himself to give as alms five thousand pesos of eight reals at the coming of the ships which were expected from Nueva Espana this present year; that sum is to be distributed and expended in the said work, and to erect a building for the orphans, as that which they have is in danger of falling. He bound himself to deliver the said amount to the person who should be designated by myself. In consideration of all which has been recounted, I have extended to him this grant, charging him to secure a confirmation thereof from your Majesty within four years reckoned from the day of sailing of the first ships from these islands for Nueva Espana, and to send a special power of attorney to petition for the said confirmation in that court. Likewise he must remit there the amount of his monthly income when he sends for the said confirmation, as is ordered and commanded by the royal decrees cited, and under the penalties therein provided. I had previously posted notices in public places of this city for those who might have claims to the said encomienda, a reasonable time before, as is ordered by the said royal decree cited, which treats of this matter. I have found by investigation that this is not included in the provisions for the order of appointments to encomiendas and offices, as is therein provided. I sent him the commission on the fourth of December, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

Appointments to offices of justice and war

I have appointed Sergeant Pedro Diaz Barroso as corregidor of the island of Mariveles and its jurisdiction, as he is a man with the qualifications which that office seems to require, and has served your Majesty in these islands for a long time. He has a yearly salary of one hundred and fifty pesos, which is the same as was enjoyed by his predecessor. I sent the commission on the sixth of August, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I appointed Alferez Geronimo Banegas, a citizen of this island, as corregidor of the Negros Islands and their jurisdiction, and as military commander there; for he is a person of the qualifications which this position demands, and an old settler in this country who has served your Majesty here. He has a salary of a hundred and fifty pesos of common gold per year, and with that is to serve both offices, which is the same as his predecessors have had. I sent his commission on the third of August of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I have appointed Alferez Andres Martin as corregidor of the island of Mindoro and its jurisdiction, and as military commander there; for he is a person of the qualifications which the place demands. He has served your Majesty more than twenty years in these islands and those of Terrenate, and been present at the various battles which have



occurred. He has a salary of a hundred pesos of common gold per year, for which he serves both offices. I sent him the commission on the fifth of August of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.



Page 105

I have appointed Captain Juan de Mendoza as alcalde-mayor of the province of Pangasinan and its jurisdiction; and military commander there; for he is a person of the necessary abilities and qualifications, and has been more than twenty years in these islands in your Majesty's service, when occasion offered. He has a salary of three hundred pesos of common gold per year, and with this serves both offices. I sent his commission on the ninth of August of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

Admiral Don Christoval de Lugo y Montalvo, who is fulfilling the duties of my lieutenant-governor and commander-in-chief in the provinces of the Pintados, I have appointed alcalde-mayor of the province of Zibu and its jurisdiction, and captain of infantry of the company which is in garrison in that camp; for he is a person of many merits, and has served your Majesty in these islands and other regions sufficiently to deserve all the said offices of my lieutenant, alcalde-mayor, and captain of infantry. He has only the salary of a captain, amounting to about six hundred pesos per year, and no more. Thereby is saved to the royal treasury the eight hundred which he drew merely for the office of my lieutenant-governor and commander-in-chief. I sent him the commissions on the ninth of August, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

Captain Don Fernando Galindo I have appointed alcalde-mayor of the province of La Laguna de Vay and its jurisdiction, and military commander there; for he is a person of many excellent qualifications for this office, and has been occupied in the service of your Majesty in these islands whenever occasion has offered, where he has acquitted himself very well. He has a yearly salary of three hundred pesos of common gold, and for it serves both offices. I sent him the commission on the tenth of August, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I have appointed Captain Diego Lorenzo de Trexo alcalde-mayor of the province of Calilaya and its jurisdiction, and military commander there, as he is a person of the qualifications and parts required for this office. For thirty-two years he has been in these islands, and has served whenever occasion offered, and acquitted himself well. He has a yearly salary of three hundred pesos of common gold, for which he serves both offices. I sent his commission on the eighth of August, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I have appointed Captain and Sargento-mayor Juan Garcia Pelaez chief justice of the port of Cavite, and military commander, and keeper of Fort San Philipe there, as he is a person of many excellent qualities, and has served your Majesty many years in these islands. For these three offices he has no appointed salary from the royal treasury, and accordingly serves without it. I sent him the commission as chief justice on the thirteenth of August of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

Alferez Luis Triscomia I have appointed alcalde-mayor of the Calamianes Islands and their jurisdiction, and military commander there, as he has been more than seventeen years in these islands, serving your Majesty when occasion offered, and has the

necessary qualifications. He has a salary of three hundred pesos per year, for which he serves both offices. I sent his commission on the third of August of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.



Page 106

I have appointed Alferez Pedro Alvarez corregidor of the jurisdiction of Ybalon, and military commander there, as he is possessed of the qualifications required for this office, and has served your Majesty in these islands more than sixteen years when occasion offered. He has a salary of a hundred pesos of common gold per year, for which he serves both offices. I sent him the commission on the fifth of August, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I have appointed Captain Silvestre de Aybar warden of the camp and fort San Gabriel, which overlooks the Parian of the Sangleys, with power to administer justice in all matters which may arise in the said Parian; for he is a person of proved capability, and of the qualifications and abilities which are necessary for this office. He has served your Majesty for thirty years past in those kingdoms, Nueva Espana and these islands. He has a salary of a thousand pesos per year, which is not paid from the royal treasury, but from that maintained by the community of Sangleys in the said Parian, where they contribute each year for matters necessary there, and for others pertaining to the royal service. I sent his commission on the seventeenth of September, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I have appointed General Don Andres Perez Franco as warden of the fort San Philippe at the port of Cavite, and military commander there and chief justice; for he has many talents and qualifications, and is well acquainted with the said port, where he has been at other times and has occupied honorable offices. He has no salary appointed from the royal treasury, and accordingly serves without it, on account of the promotion of Sargento-mayor Juan Garcia Pelaez, who held the said offices, to be commander-in-chief of the provinces of Cagaian, Ylocos, and Pangasinan. I sent him the commission as such warden on the twenty-eighth of September of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

General Don Juan de Alcarazo I have appointed chief commander of the two galleons "San Yldifonso" and "Nuestra Senora de Pena de Francia," which I sent as a fleet against the Dutch enemy who was at the port of Macan awaiting the ships of the Portuguese, which were going back from here with the produce from the merchandise which they brought. The said galleons went to protect and guard them, and for other purposes pertaining to the service of your Majesty in the localities which the Dutch infested. I made this appointment on account of his many good qualities and because he has served your Majesty in the military habit and profession twenty-three years—both in the royal navy in those parts, and in these islands—whenever occasion offered, occupying posts and offices of the most honor, wherein he has acquitted himself very well. He performed the said office for six hundred Castilian ducados per month, which is the salary drawn by similar commanders. I sent him the commission on the ninth of October, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.



Page 107

Captain and Sargento-mayor Don Pedro Munoz de Mendiola, who serves in this royal camp of Manila, I have appointed commander of the galleon “Nuestra Senora de Pena de Francia,” one of those which was sent in charge of the said Don Juan de Alcaraso, to the said port of the city of Macan, and other places, against the said Dutch enemy. For he is possessed of the suitable abilities and qualifications, and has served your Majesty in these islands, Flandez, and other parts of Europe, in the military profession; and had been serving in the said office, retaining the said position as sargento-mayor and with the same salary which he gained before, and no other. I sent him his commission on the fifth of October, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I have appointed Captain Francisco Hernandez as captain of the company of Spanish infantry which served in the forts of Therrenate under Captain and Sargento-mayor Pedro Tufino, and as commander of the royal galleys for the protection of those islands, because permission has been given to the said Tufino to come to this city. I made this appointment of the said Captain Francisco Hernandez because he is possessed of the necessary qualifications and ability, and has served your Majesty in the military profession for twenty-two years in this region. He came to these islands as a soldier, and from them went to the said forts of Terrenate, where he served twenty years as a soldier and with extra pay as head of a squadron, sergeant, alferes, adjutant, and captain of infantry, being present whenever occasion for his service arose, and rendering especial services there. He has a salary of six hundred pesos per year, for which he has to serve both offices, as soon as the said company is delivered to him. I sent him the commission on the twenty-ninth of October, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

On the said day I appointed the said Captain Francisco Hernandez commander of the relief that is carried to the forts of Therrenate, as he is in every way satisfactory, and possessed of the necessary qualifications, as has been said in the previous clause. For his services in the said duty he received six hundred Castilian ducados per month, during the whole time that he served, which is the salary drawn by similar commanders.

I have appointed Adjutant Alonso Serrano a captain of Spanish infantry, of the company which serves in the forts of Therrenate under Captain Lorenzo Hernandez, as the latter had permission to come to this city. I made this appointment because he has the qualifications and abilities which are required. Twenty-four years ago he came to these islands in the capacity of a soldier, and during twenty of them has resided and served in the said fort—being a soldier, commander of a squadron with extra pay, sergeant, alferes, and adjutant, and being present on all occasions when his services were necessary. He has a salary of six hundred pesos per year, reckoning from the day when the company is given over to him. I sent him his commission on the eighteenth of November, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.



Page 108

Former Adjutant Alonso de Peraza, of this camp, I have appointed captain of infantry, of the company which served in the said forts of Therrenate under Captain Don Juan de Santiesteban Bracamonte, as the latter had permission to come to this city. I made this appointment because he has the necessary qualifications and abilities, and has served your Majesty twenty-four years in this region in the military profession, in these islands and those of Therrenate. He was present at the recovery of the latter, and during the two fights when the Dutch General Pablos Blancanden was taken, and in other encounters and battles which took place on land and sea, against the Dutch, and the natives of Therrenate. He became a sergeant, and was present at the battle between General Don Juan Rronquillo and the Dutch. He was a second time made sergeant, and again alferéz, from which he was promoted to be an adjutant, and has rendered other distinguished services. He has a salary of six hundred pesos per year, which he is to enjoy, from the day when the said company is given over to him. I sent him his commission on the seventeenth of November, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

Captain Roderigo de Mesa I have appointed captain of a company which was brought to this city, and which he took to reinforce the forts of Therrenate. For he is a person of the necessary qualifications, and has served your Majesty twenty-four years in this region in the military profession, both in these islands and in those of Therrenate—where he served fifteen years with success as a private musketeer, a commander of a squadron with extra pay, sergeant, alferéz, and adjutant, in the said camp—being present whenever there was occasion for his service, on land or sea, and rendering distinguished services, as appeared by his papers. He draws as salary six hundred pesos per year. I sent his commission on the twenty-seventh of November of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

I have appointed Captain Alonso de Balle alcalde-mayor and military commander of the province of Ylocos, owing to the death of Captain Alvaro de Loazes, for there are found in him the necessary qualifications and abilities. He has served your Majesty for twenty-two years past in these islands, being present when occasion offered, and has acquitted himself well. From the offices with which he is entrusted he draws a salary of three hundred pesos of common gold per year, for which he serves both offices. I sent his commission on the sixth of December, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.

Captain Don Fernando Bezerra I have appointed commander of the ship “Santisima Trinidad,” which I sent with reinforcements and supplies to join the two armed galleons which General Don Juan de Alcaraso took in his charge to Pulotimon, and other parts of Sian, to secure thereby good results for the service of your Majesty, because it was impossible to take with them a patache when they left for Macan. I gave him this appointment because he has the qualifications needed, and has served in the military profession in these islands and in Therrenate for a long time, rendering distinguished services. He drew a salary at the rate of six hundred Castilian ducados a month, which

is the wages of similar commanders. I sent him the commission on the thirteenth of December of the year one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven.



Page 109

Captain Don Lope de Sosa I have appointed alcalde-mayor of the jurisdiction of Tondo, and military commander there, as he is of the abilities and qualifications which are necessary. He came to these islands twenty years ago, and has here served when occasion arose, and held honorable offices and charges, wherein he has acquitted himself well. He has three hundred pesos of common gold per year as a salary, for which he serves both offices. I sent him the commission on the eleventh of January, one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Alferez Pedro de Mora Salcedo I have appointed corregidor of the jurisdiction of Leyte, Zamare, and Babao, and captain and military commander there, as he has the qualifications and ability demanded by the office. He came to these islands ten years ago in the service of your Majesty, and has served here and in Therrenate, having been a sergeant, and alferez, and a substitute. In an encounter with the Dutch, at which he was present, the two lower bones of his right leg were both broken by a musket-ball, and he was present in other engagements. He has a yearly salary of two hundred pesos of common gold. I sent him his commission on the nineteenth of January of one thousand, six hundred and twenty-eight.

I appointed Captain Fernando Lopez de Perona alcalde-mayor of the province of Bulacan and military commander there, as he is possessed of the necessary qualifications and abilities for this office, and has served your Majesty for sixteen years, both in the fleet of the Ocean Sea and in these islands, and acquitted himself well of what has been entrusted to him. He has a yearly salary of three hundred pesos of common gold, for which he serves both offices. I sent him his commission on the fifteenth of March, one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Alferez Martin Larios, deputy warden of Fort Santiago of this city of Manila, I have promoted to be captain of Spanish infantry, of the company which served under Captain and Sargento-mayor Don Antonio de Vera in the garrison of San Salvador in Hermosa Island; for he has the necessary qualifications and abilities, and has served your Majesty thirteen years past in military habit and profession in the states of Flandez, having been a soldier, commander of a squadron, and a sergeant, being present on the occasions and at the places where his services were needed, where he performed distinguished services. He came over to these islands with the reenforcements which he brought here. He was alferez in Nueva Espana of a company which was raised in Zacatecas; and in that position he came to this city, where he was appointed lieutenant of the said Fort Santiago. He has a salary of six hundred pesos of common gold per year, as do the rest in this camp. I sent him his commission on the sixteenth of March, one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.



Page 110

Alferez Juan Moreno Criado I have appointed lieutenant warden of the said Fort Santiago of this city, as he is of the requisite qualifications and has served in military habit and profession more than twenty-four years past, since he came to these islands. He was present at the recovering of the forts at Therrenate, where he served, and was present at the actions which took place, as he likewise was in these islands, rendering especial service. He has four hundred and twenty pesos a year as salary. I sent him his commission on the twentieth of March of one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Captain Juan de Herrera I appointed alcalde-mayor and military commander of the province of Camarines, as he was of the qualifications and ability necessary for that office. He came to these islands twenty-three years ago and has served your Majesty in military profession and in offices of justice, and other employments in which he has been occupied, wherein he has acquitted himself well. He has three hundred pesos a year as salary, for which he serves both offices. I sent him his commission on the fourteenth of April of one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Captain Francisco Ramos, a soldier of the company of Captain Diego Lopez Lobo, I have appointed captain of the galley "Nuestra Senora de Loreto," which was built in the province of Camarines, and is to be sent to the forts of Therrenate; for he possesses the required qualifications and ability, and for eighteen years has served your Majesty in these islands and in those of Therrenate. He has a salary of thirty-five Castilian ducados per month, which is the wage of galley-captains of the forts of Therrenate. I sent him his commission on the thirteenth of April of one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Alferez Francisco de los Rios Coronel I have appointed corregidor and military commander of the Catanduanes Islands, as he has the required qualifications, and has served in the capacity of soldier in these islands since the year one thousand six hundred and nine, when he came out here, and has been present at the actions which have occurred. He has a salary of a hundred pesos per year. I sent him the commission on the twentieth of May of one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Captain Francisco Gimenez I have appointed captain of Spanish infantry, of the company which served in the garrison of Hermosa Island under Captain Don Benito Flores, and as sargento-mayor of all the infantry of the said garrison; for he possesses the required qualifications and ability. During the twenty years while he has served your Majesty in military service in these islands he has been present when occasion offered, and likewise in the forts of Therrenate. He has always acquitted himself well, and performed distinguished services. He draws a salary of six hundred pesos per year, as do the rest of this camp, and with it serves both offices. I sent him the commission on the twenty-sixth of June of the year one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.



Page 111

Alferez Don Pedro de Axqueda Menchaca I have appointed alferez-royal of the ships which are despatched this present year to Nueva Espana, as he has the requisite qualifications and ability. He has served in military service in this camp in the capacity of soldier, and in that of alferez. He is the son of the master-of-camp Christoval de Axcueta Menchaca, who died in these islands in the service of your Majesty. He has eight hundred pesos per year of salary. I sent him his commission on the fourth of July of the year one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Alferez-royal Augustin de Salduendo I have appointed captain of infantry, of the Spanish infantry company, which served in this camp under Captain Don Diego de Axqueta Menchaca—who was promoted to the position of admiral of the ships which this year go to Nueva Espana; and later to the command of them, on account of Sargento-mayor Don Gonzalo Rronquillo remaining in these islands, who had been appointed commander of them. I gave this appointment to the said Augustin de Salduendo because he was possessed of the requisite qualifications and abilities, and had served your Majesty in these islands in military habit and profession nineteen years in the capacity of soldier, commander of squadron with extra pay, sergeant, alferez, and other offices, and was present when occasion offered, and rendered especial services. He has a salary of six hundred pesos per year. I sent him his commission on the twenty-eighth of July of one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

I appointed Alferez Domingo Francisco de Portilla as corregidor of the island of Mindoro and its jurisdiction, and military commander there, as he has the requisite qualifications, and has served your Majesty in these islands for twenty years past in military service. He has a salary of a hundred pesos per year. I sent his commission on the thirteenth of July, one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Sargento-mayor Don Philippe de Lezcano I appointed captain of infantry, of the company which is in garrison at the fort of Tanda, in the province of Caraga, and keeper of the fort there, and military commander, as he has the requisite qualifications and ability. He has served your Majesty thirteen years in military service in Flandez, and passed to these islands in the position of sargento-mayor of infantry which came as reinforcements last year, one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven. He is assigned a salary of six hundred pesos per year, which is what the other captains of this camp have, and with this he will serve the two offices. I sent him the commission on the twentieth of July of one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.



Page 112

Admiral Don Diego de Axcueta Menchaca, who was appointed admiral of the ships which go to Nueva Espana this year, I have promoted to the office of commander of them on account of Sargento-mayor Don Gonzalo Rronquillo (who was appointed to this office) remaining in these islands. I have made this appointment because the said Don Diego de Axcueta has the requisite qualifications and ability. He has served your Majesty in military service in these islands for nineteen years past, having been a soldier, alferes, and several times a captain of infantry, and one of the guard of Governor Don Juan de Silva. He was present at the battle with the Dutch enemy under the said governor in the year six hundred and ten, at Playa Honda. He went with the governor to the forts of Therrenate, and was present at the taking of Xilolo and Sabugo. On his return to this city he went to the strait of Sincapura with the said governor, and was afterward in the battle with the Dutch enemy in the year sixteen at the said Plaia Honda where Master-of-camp Don Juan Rronquillo acted as general of the fleet. He afterward became captain of infantry in this camp; and while he held this position I appointed him commander of a ship which went with the fleet in my charge to Hermosa Island. He is the son of Master-of-camp Christoval de Axcueta Menchaca, who died in these islands in the service of your Majesty. He has a decree directing that he be occupied in offices of justice and war, conformably to his rank and ability. He has performed other distinguished services for your Majesty. He has a yearly salary of three thousand Castilian ducados, which is the same as has been enjoyed by the commanders of similar vessels. I sent him the commission on the twenty-fourth of July of one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Captain Don Fernando Galindo I have appointed admiral of the ships which will go this present year to Nueva Espana, as he has the requisite qualifications and ability, and has served your Majesty in military service for twenty-two years past in the galleys of Ytalia and other parts of Europa, and in these islands. While here he was captain of infantry three times, once in this camp and twice in the garrison of Cagayan. He was alcalde-mayor and military commander in that province, and afterward was made alcalde-mayor and military commander in the province of La Laguna de Vay. He was present when occasion offered for his services, and acquitted himself well with what was entrusted to him, rendering other important services to your Majesty. He has a yearly salary of two thousand Castilian ducados. I sent him the commission on the twenty-eighth of July, one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.

Concerning the other appointments that may be made, I will send a report during the coming year, in the same manner as your Majesty orders me. May God our Lord protect you many years, with the addition of greater kingdoms and seignories, according to the needs of Christendom. At the port of Cavite, on the second day of the month of August of the year one thousand six hundred and twenty-eight.



Page 113

In the ships which have just arrived from Nueva Spana in these islands there came a royal decree by which your Majesty was pleased to confirm and approve the grant which Governor Don Alonso Faxardo made to these islands, while he was governor, to Don Luis Faxardo, his brother, on the first of April of the former year one thousand six hundred and twenty-one, giving him the encomienda of natives at Bombon and its dependencies, in the province of Balayan, which contains two thousand seven hundred and twenty-five tributarios. For this within four years he was to secure a confirmation from your Majesty, as appeared from the royal decree under date of the tenth of September of one thousand six hundred and twenty-six, countersigned by the secretary Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras—which decided me not to proceed to the execution of this without first informing your Majesty as to what has passed in this matter, and the state in which affairs are at present. I found, Sire, when I arrived in these islands and undertook the government thereof in the said year of one thousand six hundred and twenty-six, that the said encomienda was vacated, and declared so by Governor Don Fernando de Silva, because the said Don Luis Faxardo had not secured the said confirmation from your Majesty within the designated period. During the vacancy, the proceeds of the products and the profits were placed in the royal treasury. This encomienda had two thousand five hundred and seven tributarios, which, as they appeared to me to be a large number, I divided. I made a grant thereof in the name of your Majesty, according to law, as being vacant, to two persons of considerable rank, ability, merits, and services. One of these is general Don Antonio de Leoz, to whom I gave one thousand six hundred tributarios thereof, as I knew that he had served your Majesty for twenty-four years past, both in the kingdom of Napoles and in these islands—whither he came from that kingdom with Governor Don Juan de Silva, as alferes of the company. Afterward he was made captain, and served in this camp with other offices, being present when occasion arose. He has always acquitted himself well of what was entrusted to him, as will appear by his papers and commission—which I have despatched to him; and which I understand should already be in that court to petition for and secure the confirmation, according to the command. He is married to Dona Juana Gallinato, legitimate daughter and sole heir of Master-of-camp Juan Xuarez Gallinato, who died in these islands in your Majesty's service, being a person of many services. I charged him with a pension, from the said tributarios, of one hundred and fifty pesos, which he each year gives and pays to Dona Beatriz Cornexo de Tapia—a widow, who had been the wife of Doctor Juan Manuel de La Vega, formerly auditor of the royal Audiencia and of these islands; for she was very poor and was suffering need. In consideration of making this grant Dona Juana Gallinato resigned one thousand two hundred



Page 114

tributarios, which she held as an encomienda for a second life, so that these might be assigned to other persons. The other nine hundred and seven tributarios remaining I assigned to General Don Juan de Arcarasso, likewise a person of great ability and merit, and many services. He has served your Majesty for thirty-four years past in those lands of Europa, in the royal fleet and elsewhere, as well as in these islands—where he came as captain of a company of Spanish infantry, which came with the reenforcements of the year six hundred and fourteen. He has held and served in other charges and honorable offices, being present when occasion arose. Thus far and ever he has acquitted himself very well, as will appear more at length by his paper and the commission which I sent him—which should already be in that court to secure the confirmation of the said encomienda. They are likewise recounted in a clause of a letter which I despatched to your Majesty in the past year of one thousand six hundred and twenty-seven, with the report concerning encomiendas and offices. I made these two grants on the eleventh of December one thousand six hundred and twenty-six, and issued decrees for them, having fulfilled all the requirements which are ordered by the royal decrees. I beseech your Majesty to have examined the matter referred to, and the said encomienda considered vacant and so declared, in conformity to the royal decrees which treat of this matter; and as such to have the appointment given to the said two worthy persons, who are in possession thereof by a just title. Above all, I beseech you to command that it be your pleasure that this be observed and complied with; and in the meantime I shall make no change, because it appears to me that I acted justly, and that it is expedient for the service of your Majesty. Dated *ut supra*. Sire, the humble vassal of your Majesty.

Don Juan Nino de Tavora

[*Endorsed*: “Examined; have it joined with the others on this matter.” “In the Council, October 9, 630.”]

LETTERS TO FELIPE IV FROM GOVERNOR TAVORA

Doubts in judicial matters

Sire:

1. Problems in regard to matters of justice are continually arising, of which to inform your Majesty, in order that you may have the advisable decision made therein, and so that the dissensions that are wont to arise here from such doubts may be avoided. In regard to the Spaniards and inhabitants of these islands, but one problem has arisen—namely, when an encomendero marries an encomendera, whether they may both retain encomiendas; or whether, after choosing the one that they may esteem better, the other



should he vacated. The practice of these islands is that one of the two encomiendas is vacated. In virtue of that, your Majesty's fiscal is at present petitioning before the royal Audiencia for the revenues of a certain encomienda given to



Page 115

a citizen. The auditors cannot find any order or decree from your Majesty, by which this is ordered. Consequently, there is not sufficient justification to declare judgment in favor of the fiscal. It will be advisable for your Majesty to declare it; and to my mind, in considering the fact that the encomiendas are few in number, it would be advisable that there be no change in the practice—namely, that by the very fact of an encomendero marrying an encomendera, they choose that encomienda from the two which they consider better; and that they leave the other, so that it may be regarded as belonging to another citizen. [*In the margin*: “Observe the decree in regard to this matter.”] [*Note*: “In this despatch arose the doubt that is written on a separate piece of paper enclosed with this letter. There it is decreed what must be executed.”]

2. In regard to the native Indians of these islands, I last year represented to your Majesty that it would be advisable to have judgments in their suits not rendered in the Audiencia, but by the government, by having one or two advocates or salaried men for that purpose, as is done in Nueva Espana, inasmuch as the same reasons exist here. I trust that your Majesty will have it considered, and answer in accordance with your pleasure.

3. The most usual doubts have been in regard to the Chinese or Sangleys who reside in these islands. An edict was published, at the instance of the inhabitants, in regard to the measures, quality, and prices of lumber, tile, brick, and other materials, in order to avoid the frauds and illegalities which were being introduced into this region, to the great damage of this community. The edict was published under the auspices of the government, and its execution was charged upon the alcaldes-in-ordinary. A few days after that a denunciation was made; but, when the alcalde tried to enforce the penalty, the Sangleys appealed to the royal Audiencia. The matter seemed a knotty one to me, because the edict was notoriously a government measure, and it was not advisable for its proper execution that the Sangleys be allowed such delays. I considered it best to advise the auditors of this, quoting to them the royal decrees, which ruled that they should not mix in matters of government. They, desiring to extend their jurisdiction, claimed that the trial of that appeal belonged to them, as well as the decision whether the penalty of the edict was excessive or not. I ordered the lawyers to be consulted, and all those here gave their opinion in writing, namely, that the Audiencia had no right to try such causes. Consequently, after having seen your Majesty's decree of November 4, 1606, given to Don Pedro de Acuna, in which is stated the method that must be followed in such doubts, I resolved to order that the Audiencia should not try such appeal until your Majesty, after having been informed of the matter, should rule otherwise. [*In the margin*: “Have the fiscal examine it.” “It was taken to him.” “Answered on a separate paper.”]



Page 116

4. Almost similar was another question that arose a few days after, when some Chinese merchants had been condemned, by the judge who visits the Chinese ships, to pay the penalty which they had incurred because of not having brought the ammunition and stores for your Majesty's magazines which were ordered from them since the time of Don Juan de Silva. They appealed to the royal Audiencia, who ordered the judge to come to report on the matter. It seemed to me that the same argument ruled in that as in the preceding case, and even more closely, as it was a matter of war. However, I had the lawyers consulted again. They decided that it was a military matter, and that it did not belong to the royal Audiencia. Consequently, I ordered that they do nothing further in the matter until your Majesty should be informed. [*In the margin*: "Have the fiscal examine this also." "It was taken to him." "Answered on a separate paper."]

5. Another appeal has also come in these last few days to the royal Audiencia from the governor of the Sangleys themselves. He is a person appointed to govern them in their own manner, and to take charge of the suits that are brought before him, written in the Chinese characters, and according, to their custom. And although I did not think that such appeals should be listened to, and gave my reason therefor, still the auditors persisted in endeavoring to try this case. In order not to irritate them, I have overlooked the matter, as it seemed to me that they could act in this case with less evil consequences than in the others. I advise your Majesty of it, petitioning you that it may be to your royal service to have the Audiencia notified as to what regulations cover not only the governmental and military suits, but also those of justice, touching the Chinese or Sangleys. For this some arguments occur to me, which I shall represent to your Majesty, in order to say at one time what I believe in this matter. [*In the margin*: "Take this to the fiscal also." "It was taken." "Answered on a separate paper."]

6. The Chinese, Sire, who live in these islands are almost all infidels. Their god is silver, and their religion the various ways that they have of gaining it. Their nature is cowardly; and those who come to this country have so little character that, as they are not entitled to anything among their own countrymen, they come to get their livelihood among us, serving in the most menial trades. They engage in suits and disputes very readily, in which they threaten one another; and each day they arm themselves for their sinister ends. They have innumerable methods of hiding the truth. They furnish as many false witnesses as they choose, for, as they are infidels, they do not fear God; and as they are so greedy for money, they swear [falsely], and even sell their own parents. Their names and occupations are changed in every step, although for this there may be no better reason or argument than their own ideas. They



Page 117

are many strangers, coming and going. Every year some go and others come, and consequently, the uncertainty and confusion is unavoidable. They are as freehanded in their bribes as interested in their gains. As they have control of all the merchandise, trading, gains, and mechanical trades of the country, their extreme readiness to scatter bribes is remarkable. There is no Spaniard, secular or religious, who obtains his food, clothing, or shoes, except through them. Consequently, there is scarce a Sangley who does not have his protector. Among themselves they have great system and energy in all those of one trade acting together in all matters that affect them. They guard one another against the Spaniard to such an extent that, if I wish to change my shoemaker, I will not be able to find among all those engaged in that occupation another who will sell me a shoe. If anyone would dare to do so, the others upon his return to China would bring suit before their mandarins, and thus they would destroy him and all his relatives. [*In the margin*: "Take it to the fiscal." "It was taken." "Answered on a separate paper."]

7. Therefore, since those of this nation are infidels and of so mean a condition, one can easily infer that to attempt to govern them with the method, rigor, and terms of our laws and regulations is the highest injustice and a great abuse. The usual method of judging them in their country is by a summary and verbal investigation, and an immediate punishment with the bamboo. The latter is the strap or whip which the mandarins always carry with them, as any superior is allowed to flog his inferior, without other justification or authority than that of his own plain reason. By that method is attained greater respect and obedience than in any other nation. We do not have less need for them to fear us and to obey our edicts, since they are our feet and hands for all that arises for the service of the community and that of your Majesty. But we shall never obtain that obedience and respect, unless we conform (as far as the Christian religion allows) to the methods practiced by their mandarins in commanding them. This consists in having them punished instantly by the nearest justices whenever they are found in disobedience or fraud—namely, their governor and the *alcaldes-in-ordinary*—without giving them any opportunity to go from one tribunal to another, or to drag them from one prison to another. In that they are the greater losers, as their property is wasted among the constables, attorneys, and notaries, all of whom are doing their best to skin [*pelar*] them. At the end, and in the long run, the truth is not laid bare, nor is the service of your Majesty accomplished. The Sangleys have so many methods of placing private persons, both religious and laymen, under obligation, by services and by presents, that when anything is ordered for them which does not suit them—even though it be for your Majesty's



Page 118

service, or very necessary for the common welfare—they manage to prevent the execution of it by a thousand methods, of favors and negotiations. Therefore, if in addition to all the above, the door of appeal to the royal Audiencia be opened to them from what is ordered for them, well can one see that justice itself will become the obstacle of what it should be the support. [*In the margin*: “And this.” “It was taken.” “Reply in a separate section.”]

8. I have desired to represent all the above, so that your Majesty may be pleased to order the royal Audiencia not to meddle in the affairs of the Sangleys, whether they concern government, or war, or justice. For if it has been advisable to order that—as is ordered in Nueva Espana (and the same is petitioned here)—the Audiencia do not meddle with the suits of the Indians, it will be much more advisable to observe the same in regard to the Sangleys, for the above stated reasons.

9. Likewise I have been advised that it is necessary for many matters, both of grace and of justice, that it be declared whether the governor of these islands possesses your Majesty’s authority in his government and district; and whether he represents your royal person with the privilege of alternates which the viceroys possess in their districts. Although one would believe that it must be so by law, since the person of the governor is that which is here in your Majesty’s name, and the so great distance to that court dictates how necessary it is in many cases that the governors have the authority of doing what your Majesty would do if present, with the obligation of reporting it to your Majesty; still in certain cases of grace and justice that have arisen since my arrival at these islands, the lawyers have declared that this was not plainly stated; and, consequently, I propose them to your Majesty. [*In the margin*: “Let him observe the tenor of his warrant, and the decrees and orders given regarding it.”]

10. Likewise it would be necessary that the same courtesy be ordered to be shown to the governors of the Filipinas Islands as to the viceroys in Nueva Espana, since in regard to them there are also here the same reasons and advisability for doing so. By this some little matters that have caused me innovations would be avoided. Although I pass these over, it might be that in the time of my successors they would cause some opposition. Such are for instance, that the auditors, do not permit the governor’s wife to go to the church with her husband when the assembly goes there in a body; and that the preachers do not salute the governor with words, as it is the custom to do in all the kingdoms to the person who has the authority of representing that of your Majesty. [*In the margin*: “Let the custom be followed.”]



Page 119

11. This very day a case occurred while in the hall of the public assembly, which I have thought best to refer to your Majesty. It was in regard to a decision that I gave, apropos of one of the parties, for the royal Audiencia. The secretary having come to sign the decision that the Audiencia gave in approbation of the one that I had given, called me in the record of the decision “the lord governor.” One of the auditors thought that that should not be the manner of naming me in decisions; and chided the secretary before me, saying that he was doing it to flatter me, and other things of like purport. The secretary defended himself, saying that that was the style that he had always used, and to prove it showed other decisions where not only my person is named as “lord,” but also those of the auditors. I asked the others who were present for their opinion, and they replied that it was very proper that the Audiencia should exercise that courtesy toward the governor and captain-general of these islands; and with greater reason, since he was their president, they were not to treat him the same as an alcalde-in-ordinary. Thereupon I ordered the secretary to do the same as heretofore, until your Majesty should be pleased to order differently. I petition your Majesty to be pleased to give the auditors to understand the estimation that it may please you to have for the person of your governor and captain-general; for this matter is not at all understood here. That is the reason why the governors have always been at odds with the Audiencia. I am not at odds with them, nor will I be, for I am the one who suffers, and I shall suffer it, since I am under greater obligations than they. I petition that what your Majesty may be pleased to order me be expressed so clearly that they cannot give it any other meaning; for this matter of interpreting your Majesty’s decrees is done with great ease in the Yndias, and truly rare are the decrees, if they touch upon any controversy, in which it is not necessary for your Majesty to declare them over again. [*In the margin*: “Let the custom be kept; and in the records and decisions, let the governor be called ‘lord.’”]

12. I am enclosing an official record with this letter in regard to what is forbidden to the auditors touching the suits and appeals of the Chinese or Sangleys—a caution that I am taking, as I have seen that they are complaining confusedly to your Majesty that I am preventing them from receiving suits as alcaldes of the court, not specifying as clearly as is possible what those suits and appeals are. It is my opinion that the Audiencia should not meddle with matters pertaining to the Sangleys, for the reasons that I have given for it in this despatch, and in that of the year past. Will your Majesty order what is most advisable, being assured that experience has obliged me to give the report that I submit. May our Lord preserve the Catholic and royal person of your Majesty with the increase of new kingdoms, as we your vassals desire, and as we need. Manila, August 4, 1628. Your Majesty’s humble vassal,



Page 120

Don Juan Nino de Tavora

[*In the margin*: “Let the fiscal see it.” “It was taken to him.” “Answered on a separate paper.”]

Affairs of the treasury

Sire:

Since I have to give account in this letter to your Majesty of what there is to tell in regard to your royal treasury, I shall begin it by explaining some decrees that I received the past year, which were despatched at the instance of the royal officials.

In the first decree, they complained that my predecessor, Don Alonso Faxardo, did not allow them to exercise their duties in the port of Cavite; and that he had appointed as lieutenant of the governor and captain-general, Don Andres Perez Franco, castellan of those forts. Your Majesty orders that they be allowed to perform their duties, and that commissaries be not appointed for what pertains to them. They will not conduct those suits with him; for, although I retain Don Andres Perez Franco in Cavite, I have not given him the title given him by Don Alonso—although he never used it, as I am informed. The efficient collection and care of the revenues of your Majesty belong to the royal officials; and with that power they take part in all the equipping, building, and despatch of the vessels. But the appointments of the officials of the vessels, and all else touching government and war, have always been attended to by the governors, who for this have maintained in Cavite a castellan, commandant, and chief justice, of the abilities and experience of Don Andres Perez Franco; so that, although I could rest, still I have not been negligent, but have gone in person, on the occasions for the equipment and building of vessels, every week to that port, which is a very necessary thing. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]

In the second decree they informed your Majesty that the said my predecessor did not accept the replies that were made to them in accordance with the ordinances. I trust that there will be no fault to find with me in this regard. However it is advisable to have it well understood that it cannot be done and that it is not advisable, because of the accidents that happen by observing the ordinances with the strictness that some ministers demand at times. What is certain is, that I shall never depart from what I consider to be for the greater service of your Majesty. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]

In the third decree the royal officials petition for the suppression of the rule that was introduced in the time of Don Juan de Silva, by which the royal officials should not pay anyone without an order from the governor. Your Majesty orders me to observe toward them their rights and instructions. What is done in my time is that the royal officials adjust the accounts and issue warrants; but they are not paid without my order. The

reason therefor is that, because this government has not one-half the money necessary to meet expenses and debts—as



Page 121

well as the support of the infantry, the building of ships, the repair of the fleets that guard these coasts, relief for the Malucas and the island of Hermosa and other presidios—besides inevitable things, it is necessary that the governor, who is charged with all this, know how much money there is in the treasury, and that he divide it so that it may not fail for the most necessary things, If he trusted to the royal officials in this, without having a private book of the receipts and disbursements of the treasury (as I have), when he imagined that there was money for the reenforcements of the infantry and the despatch of the fleets he would find nothing. If the treasury were supplied, there would be enough for all, and the royal officials by justifying the payments would be fulfilling their duties; but since there is not more money than for one-half of what is needed, and since we live by the art of enchantment, it is necessary that the royal officials do not pay whomever they wish, but what is most urgent and inevitable for the preservation of these kingdoms. Accordingly, the measures introduced in this regard during the term of Don Juan de Silva were very commendable and necessary. As it was so necessary a thing, persons of great experience advised me of it even before I had taken over the government, and experience shows me that it cannot be dispensed with. [*In the margin*: “Take it to the fiscal.” “The fiscal says that after having considered the reasons written by the governor, the practice which the latter declares has been followed, and is followed, namely, of not permitting the royal officials to make any payments from the royal treasury without his advice and decree, can be tolerated; for in such cases the other viceroys and governors are wont to provide the same, notwithstanding that it is ordered that they allow the royal officials to perform their duties freely. Madrid, November 19, 1630.” “That for the present, the plan now followed in this be observed, and note shall be taken that the payments made be with all justification.”]

The fourth decree is in regard to the collection of the licenses which are given to the Sangleys allowing them to remain in the islands, that this shall be made by the royal officials, and the proceeds from it punctually deposited in the royal treasury, without its being given, under any consideration, into the possession of another person. What I have to say in this particular is that, although since my arrival at these islands that money has always been deposited with the judge of the licenses, it was always delivered every week and month to the royal officials. The collection has been so well attended to that, although there were the same number of Sangleys in the time of Don Alonso Faxardo, during the interim of the Audiencia, and that of Don Fernando de Silva, when the most that was collected was eight thousand pesos, during these last two years it amounted one year to ninety-eight thousand pesos, and the other



Page 122

to ninety-five thousand. Besides this, when at the last everything was exhausted, old notes were presented; and during these last two years about twenty thousand pesos were paid. Now although the royal officials have no time so that they can take part in this collection—as it is different from all other collections that are made, and one has to keep at it all day—I have ordered them by an act, in accordance with the decree of your Majesty, that it be done in a room assigned for it, in order that it may be paid in these royal houses; and so that they may really collect in person the money which the judge whom I appoint (as I cannot attend to it), and the agents whom I hire, collect from the Sangleys who shall bring it to them. By that method your Majesty's order will be accomplished. That is not its intention, but only to keep tab on the Sangleys, and on the profit that results from the licenses. This sum is distributed in official service, and is a matter of justice. Diligent toil is expended on this collection, and the Sangleys are sought in the hills and in a thousand places where they hide, in order not to pay. Only the authority of the governor, to whom your Majesty has assigned the giving of licenses allowing the Sangleys to remain in the country, can issue the licenses and order the collection, but no other person. Your Majesty may be assured that your service is performed with great affection and care; and that I am looking out for your royal revenues much more than for my own. For since I arrived in these islands considerable has been saved for your Majesty; as it will be seen by the accounts that what cost six in former years and did not gain any profit, today costs four and is profitable; and the profit is not lost, for it is carefully expended. I know that it will be impossible for the royal officials to collect personally; but they can authorize some one to collect and deposit the money in the royal treasury every night. By that means everything will be regulated, although they never remain satisfied, for they do not have the profits which they have desired. [*In the margin: "Seen."*]

Another decree came by which your Majesty orders me to investigate the troubles which the royal Audiencia had represented as being due to the sale of the offices of the notaries for the provinces of these islands. I discussed the matter in an assembly of persons of considerable experience, both seculars and religious; and all were of the opinion that it was not advisable to sell the said offices, but that they should be filled by appointment, and changed annually along with the alcaldes-mayor. For besides that they are of very small profit to your Majesty, it is certain that if the said notaries were permanent, the said Indians would not dare to bring suits against them at the time of their residencia, which is taken each year when the alcaldes-mayor finish their office. Consequently, they come to be so tyrannical that they



Page 123

destroy the poor Indians. For that purpose, I had already resolved before the reception of the decree not to continue the sale of the said offices; and, when those which I found sold became vacant, not to resell them. Will your Majesty please consider this matter favorably, since what is most important for your royal service is that these afflicted natives be not injured by your agents. [*In the margin:* "Take it to the fiscal." "The fiscal says that, notwithstanding what the governor writes in this section, these notaryships must be ordered to be sold, or at least one in the capital of each province. For while some troubles may result from this, those which are experienced daily in regulating the notaries who are called 'appointed' are greater. Consequently, general decrees are despatched ordering the suppression of this practice in all parts of the Yndias, although it has been carried out in but few, because the said governors refuse. He petitions that it be so provided and ordered, and justice done. Madrid, November 19, 1630." "Let what is decreed be obeyed." "Observe what is decreed, in accordance with what the fiscal says."]

By the last decree concerning this matter of revenue, your Majesty orders me to investigate whether it would be advisable to make a new appraisalment of the tribute which the Indians are ordered to pay in kind; and whether it will be advisable for the Indians not to be compelled to pay in kind, but in gold or silver, or in what they were able and willing to pay. What I can say to your Majesty about this is, that the present practice in these islands was introduced by order of Governor Don Pedro de Acuna, with the consent of the royal Audiencia and the ecclesiastical prelates, by which the natives pay four reals of their tribute in kind, and one fowl besides, and the rest in money. In regard to the quantity and kinds of products which had to be given for the said four reals, the appraisalment was made according as the circumstances of each province required. After the religious and ministers who instruct the provinces had conferred among themselves, at the command of the said governor this was done, in the year 604. Since then times have changed, and the prices have been different. Accordingly, the quantity of rice or other products that the Indians are ordered to pay on account of the said four reals is too much in some provinces. Consequently, I think that your Majesty ought to order, with the assistance of another council that was called in the time of Don Pedro de Acuna that the matter be again conferred over, and decision made whether it is advisable to make a new appraisalment; and that, if that be found desirable, it be done at once. But in regard to leaving it to the Indians whether they will or will not pay the said four reals in kind, besides the fowl, in no consideration am I of the opinion that that should be left to their choice; for the natives are generally so inclined to laziness that they do



Page 124

not sow or cultivate the lands, unless forced to do so by the obligation of paying the tribute in kind, as it is assigned in accordance with the different fruits and products of the many different provinces in these islands. It is seen in these provinces by experience that the obligation of sowing in order to pay their tribute is what keeps them supplied with all kinds of food. These considerations occur to me in regard to this decree, and to the others that I received the past year concerning this matter. [*In the margin*: “Take it to the fiscal.” “The fiscal says that he agrees with what the governor writes in this section, and he is certain that it is advisable for the Indians to pay a portion of their taxes in kind; for, in any other way, they would not have the care that is advisable in rearing and planting. Madrid, November 19, 1630.” “Observe what the fiscal says.”]

Coming now to the special consideration of the revenues of this year, the receipts have been less than ever. One hundred and eighty thousand pesos came from Nueva Espana. The licenses will have amounted to ninety thousand; and the other revenues—duties, situados, moneys from vacant offices, and balances of accounts—to another fifty thousand, including in this twenty thousand that the procurators of the city of Macan gave as aid in the voyage which the galleons made in convoy of their galliots. In all it does not amount to more than three hundred and fifty thousand pesos. The expenses are more than five hundred thousand pesos; but they have been greater [than in other years], for besides the stipends of this holy church, the salaries of the royal Audiencia and other officials, the pay of the infantry of this camp and the presidios, the aid for Terrenate and the island of Hermosa, the naval storehouse at Cavite, and other ordinary expenses, many extraordinary ones have arisen. These include the fleet, the voyage of the galleons, and the embassy to China; the construction of three galleons, four brigantines, and one galleon which is being built—together with more than seven thousand pesos that the governor of Terrenate bought in food and clothing, in order to supply the lack of those which were in the flagship which was lost; and also the unavoidable expenses of this government, although the infantry have not received their entire pay. Your Majesty can easily see how we shall have passed this year. The relief has been mostly through the large contributions by which I am exhausting the inhabitants; by loans; by neglecting to collect many salaries; and by sending more than one-half of the camp on ships through those seas for eight months, in order to save the effective succor which it was necessary to give them while ashore. Consequently, I find myself owing, in loans and debts contracted in this year, to the amount of one hundred and fifty thousand pesos. That sum must be paid on the arrival of the succor from Nueva Espana. If that succor is as short as it was last year, it will mean to drive us out by the gates, and render it impossible for this government to do anything for its increase and the service of your Majesty. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]



Page 125

Nothing has placed the states of Flandes and those wars in greater stress than the mutinies. Your Majesty has a large body of infantry in these islands; and although it is in the Yndias, where it seems to those in Espana that everything is in superabundance, that is a delusion; for the soldiers experience much misery and hardships, and see only a scanty relief, and every year a large amount of pay remains still due to them. All the remote presidios suffer, and in Terrenate the soldiers desert to the enemy. I humbly entreat your Majesty to consider these reasons, and have the viceroys of Nueva Espana strictly ordered to send us what is asked from them. For in no other way will they succor these islands, as is advisable; nor do they, in other things, provide anyone to whom can be entrusted the assaying [of metals]. Some persons have done this, but have not had the certainty that was desired. I trust in God that He will help me to attain some success. I shall not desist from the effort—and that, be it understood, without expense to your Majesty. I have some ores in my house again, which I am assaying—mainly because I have no one who understands it thoroughly—although I am proceeding almost blindly. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]

After having written this, news came of the arrival of the ships of this year, and a report of the succor that is sent in it, namely, 250,000 pesos in reals. The treasury now owes 150,000 pesos to the citizens for loans, and for food which has been taken from the natives on credit, for the expenses of this year. We cannot neglect to pay any part of that sum as soon as the ships reach port, in order not to lose credit with the inhabitants and natives, who are the ones who support us most. Taking then 150,000 pesos from the 250,000 that come, only 100,000 remain to be deposited in the treasury for the expenses of this year. Last year, when the succor arrived there was nothing owing for loans or food. In the matter of expenses I have been so moderate that I have not paid the salaries of the government employees, nor the debts of any of the back years. I have kept the infantry on ships for the space of eight months, in order to save the succor and actual cash that would have to be given them if they were ashore. Yet at the end of the year the treasury has been found pledged to the extent of the said 150,000 pesos. Since at least 80,000 pesos in reals are to be expended from the treasury this year in relief expeditions, and since we can not fail to have the expenses of last year, I find that in the coming July of 629, when the ships which I am now despatching arrive (if God be pleased to bring them back safely), we will owe 250,000 pesos in loans and food. That will be all the succor that I can count upon as being ordered to be sent me. Neither of those can I get here in this country, for the loan is a grievous burden on the inhabitants. My rigor cannot be greater than that of the present year. And, even did I secure these supplies, we shall be ruined none the less on that account in the following year, since at the time of the arrival of the succor, we shall be owing it all. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]



Page 126

The ordinary expense of these islands, if the infantry are given the full amount of their pay, is seven hundred and fifty thousand pesos per year, at appears from the reports of accounts that I am now sending. The unavoidable expense of necessary aid, factories, salaries, and stipends, amounts to 550,000 pesos. What these islands produce from year to year, in money which can be deposited in the treasury, as an aid to the ordinary expenses, amounts to 150,000 pesos. That leaves 400,000 pesos, which must be sent in reals every year from Nueva Espana. That should be by way of a gift or consignment (as your Majesty does in other places of less importance and danger than these); and it should not remain at the will of the viceroys of Nueva Espana whether they will send the money or not—even if they have to get it by loans. And even if this be ordered in the manner in which I request, the treasury will still remain under the obligations and shortage in which it will have been involved all these current years. With good administration and better intelligence—and every day I am trying to further the increase of the royal possessions—I hope that this will be retrieved. For if we have the means necessary to maintain the fleets in activity, we shall endeavor therewith to retrieve most of our arrears. But if the necessary funds be not given, we must necessarily lose what is now sent, which will be of no advantage when our fleet is rendered useless for lack of what is needed. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]

I am very sure that your Majesty will have heard by different ways of my care in watching your royal treasury, and the change that has taken place in it, and the reform in the expenses since my arrival in this government. But I feel obliged humbly to petition your Majesty to be pleased to withdraw me from it in case that there is no opportunity of succoring it, as I petition; for I am very certain of the rapidity with which it is hastening to its final destruction, and it is not proper that a possession of so great importance for the Roman church and the crown of your Majesty be lost in the hands of persons of my character and desires. May our Lord preserve the Catholic and royal person of your Majesty, with the increase and prosperity which we your vassals desire and as we need. Manila, August 4, 1628.

Just now has been brought to me what this royal Audiencia writes to your Majesty, all complaining that the thirds of their salaries are not paid to them with the promptness that is ordered; that sometimes two or three thirds are owing to them; and that the cause of this is the annoyance and trouble brought about by the governors ordering that they be not paid without their special order. What has been done in this matter during my term will be seen by the testimony that I enclose with the present letter. It would be a strong case if there were any money in the royal treasury, in view of the shortness of the succors as the ships



Page 127

cannot be expected for the last third, that of April. The same measure has been taken this year with all the officials in general, as well as to myself. The treasury owes me ten thousand pesos, and to the citizens a great sum in loans, for since the needs of the treasury are so pressing, we all must feel it. The ships have arrived late, and order has been given to pay immediately the third that is due. What remains to be paid will be paid by the end of this month, when it will be due. Thus have we been doing hitherto, and there has been no delay in any third, unless for two or three days that are spent in making out the vouchers and giving the decree or order—without which nothing is paid, for the reason that I gave above in the third section of this letter. This appears a vexation to the Audiencia. May God preserve the Catholic and royal person of your Majesty, as Christendom needs. Manila, August 4, 1628. Sire, the humble vassal of your Majesty,

Don Juan Nino de Tavora

[*In the margin*: “Take it to the fiscal.” “The fiscal says that in regard to the governor taking charge of the payments that are to be made in the royal treasury, he refers to what he has said in another section of this letter. In regard to his holding back the thirds of the salaries of the auditors, it must be ordered that that be not done unless it is rendered necessary by a very urgent occasion. Madrid, November 19, 1630.” “Let him see that their salaries are not withheld from the auditors, preferring them to all the other payments that shall be made.”]

Governmental affairs

Sire:

What occurs to me, of which to write your Majesty concerning this government, in addition to the matters of justice, revenue, and war (of which I am writing in separate letters), is, first, of the peace and quiet that has been enjoyed in this community. All the tribunals maintain peace among themselves, and act with great harmony and unanimity. And although a few occasions and controversies do not fail to arise in the course of the year in all of the tribunals, I endeavor to lean toward that which is of most importance to us, namely, peace. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]

The city has been beautified by the building of a bridge which was desired for a long time; and, although it had been regarded as almost impossible, we now see it in such condition that we can cross by it within two months. Then we shall be able to attend to the conducting of the water or fountain with which your Majesty so earnestly charged me. In this and other buildings, I exert myself very willingly. If the inhabitants were in so easy circumstances that taxes could be imposed on their possessions to carry this construction forward, there would be much more work, [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]



Page 128

One night in the month of January, fire was carelessly set (as far as could be learned) in the Parian of the Sangleys or Chinese who live close to the walls of this city. All the buildings were of wood and straw; and consequently, although we went to the rescue as quickly and energetically as possible, the fire could not be extinguished. I viewed the fire from the guard-house itself, which looks out on the Parian, in order to prevent the movements that the Chinese might attempt under such circumstances. The master-of-camp, Don Lorenzo Olaco, entered the Parian itself, and by his timely efforts, and through God's help, he saved the convent and church of the fathers of St. Dominic, who have charge of the Chinese. The latter, being infidels, were not a little surprised at seeing only the convent and house of the fathers escape so great a fire. Almost all the Parian has been rebuilt, with much better outlines and edifices than before, and that to such an extent that this city is beautified by buildings so fine. [*In the margin*: "Seen."]

There have also been other fires this year. One was in the city of Cibu, where the convents of the calced and discalced religious of St. Augustine were burned, together with some houses of the most influential inhabitants. Another was in the city of [Nuestra Senora] del Rosario de Terrenate, where the convent of St. Francis and the royal hospital were burned, together with a considerable portion of the native village. The edifices in these regions are generally of wood or bamboo, and the roofs of straw. Consequently, they are very liable to such disasters. Now edifices of stone are being introduced, roofed with tile or brick, and therefore these troubles are being averted. [*In the margin*: "Seen."]

The year has been a productive one for rice, which is the wheat of this country. We are experiencing the great blessing that will result from the cultivated farms that have recently commenced to be established by the Spaniards. They are cultivated by the Chinese, who are excellent farmers. I am encouraging it to the best of my ability, as I believe this is the shortest road to provide this city with plenty of food.

In regard to the trade and commerce of silks and other products of China, in which consists all the substance of the inhabitants of this community, certain straits will be experienced this year, because the returns from Nueva Espana have been very slight, and prices here are very high. Consequently, all the city has thought, with the general consent, that there should be no [record of] investment, or register, in the ships that are despatched this year to Nueva Espana for aid. Thus was I petitioned in the name of the whole city. I discussed it in the session with the auditors, and in a treasury meeting with those who attend that. All thought that what the city petitioned should be conceded, as it was well known that it would tend to its increase and profit,



Page 129

or to say better, to the restoration of this community. Your Majesty has much more interest in that than in the duties on the investment and register, which are of slight consideration to this treasury and to that of Mexico; while it is of great interest to all the monarchy that so much silver be not sent to China as was going every year from these kingdoms of your Majesty. Since your royal decrees make so much of the harm that would follow to those kingdoms and to all the monarchy from excesses in these regions, I do not doubt that the decision to set aside the [record of] investment for this year will be quite in accord with its welfare and to your Majesty's pleasure. [*In the margin*: "Take it to the fiscal." "The fiscal says that, in spite of the causes mentioned by the governor in this section of his letter, he has been notified from Mexico and various other places in regard to this particular; and that the ships were laden with merchandise of great value. Hence the omission of the register only served to defraud the royal duties. Consequently, the governor should be censured for his act and a greater demonstration [of displeasure] reserved for what should result from his inspection and residencia from Mexico, that being one of the matters referred to that city." "Let the decision of the fiscal be followed; and advise the inspector of this, so that he may charge those who are guilty."]

Not less attention has been paid to the government of the Indians and natives of these provinces. I found them greatly oppressed and harassed by the many burdens, assessments, and services that were imposed on them for the service of your Majesty and the support of the government employees and justices. In regard to this matter, I held several conferences with the ecclesiastical prelates, the regulars, and the seculars. At these were present your Majesty's fiscal, the assessor of the government, and two encomenderos in the name of the others, and I conferred with them on the most important points. Later, with general consent, I made a new set of instructions and ordinances concerning the justices and encomenderos. By them was prohibited under heavy penalties whatever had been introduced that was harmful to the Indians. An attested copy of certain points was given to the superiors of the orders and to the ministers who are not regulars, of which it seemed best that they should be notified at the same meeting. They were strictly charged with the execution of those clauses; under penalty that if redress were not made by their own action, your Majesty will enforce it. And in order that some cooperation might be supplied on the part of your royal treasury to this general relief which we are trying to effect for the Indians, it was resolved, with the consent of the tribunal of the treasury, to pay the natives who serve in the naval storehouse, the rope-factory, and in the repairs of the ships of your Majesty, a moderate sum which seemed a just recompense for their labor. By



Page 130

that means, and without any remarkable cost to your Majesty (since other expenses were cut down), the villages were relieved of many thousands of ducados which they had to contribute (to their own ruin) every year for the just payment of the aforesaid services. Thus, adding to all this the efforts that, as I wrote in the letter on military affairs, have been made and are being undertaken in regard to their protection, I think everything possible will have been done this year for the just government and administration of these unfortunate natives. [*In the margin*: “Take it to the fiscal.” “The fiscal says that from what this section shows, the zeal and care of the governor in the welfare, protection, and instruction of those natives ought to be esteemed, and he ought to be ordered to go ahead. At present nothing else in particular can be answered or advised, because this letter does not contain the matters mentioned in it and said to have been given to the religious orders, etc.” “Advise him that the papers have not come, and that we are awaiting them, in order to decide as shall be most advisable.”]

Quite a number of meetings were also held in regard to the government of the Sangleys or Chinese, both those naturalized in the country and those who are transient—the traders and mechanics, who are very numerous. All that needed reform was discussed very deliberately, and is being carried out in accordance with the decisions of the other tribunals. However, we cannot help having a million difficulties in regard to all the matters concerning that nation, as we do not govern them after their own manner—as I state in greater detail to your Majesty in the letter on judicial matters, when discussing the manner in which I think those people should be governed. It is sure and certain that so long as there cannot be the remedy that I ask for in this matter, what is desired and expedient cannot be attained. [*In the margin*: “Seen; and have particular care in this.”]

The decrees, instructions, and ordinances sent to these islands, both to the governors and to other tribunals and officials, are the rule for the right government of the islands. Very many of them are missing—some being lost by carelessness, and others hidden through malice—and orders are not found for many things that would be necessary, while others, because they were carelessly drawn up, are, when placed in practice, overruled by saying that there was a decree for it. Consequently, desirous of the clarity required in so important a matter, I petition your Majesty to be pleased to have some folios of them printed and sent to this government. [*In the margin*: “For all the Council.” “Have a pamphlet printed of all these orders and send it to him, and for that purpose send Antonio de Leon to me.” “I have made an agreement with Don Fernando and Antonio de Leon.”]



Page 131

A seminary for orphan boys is a work of great importance for this city, as there are usually, in lands so remote, many who are unprotected and without parents or relatives. Your Majesty orders me by a royal decree to favor it, and to seek means by which to found it. Consequently, in accordance with the order, I granted an encomienda of five hundred tributes to one of the foremost inhabitants of this city, namely, Captain Pedro de Navarrete, on condition that he would give a pension of five thousand pesos in ready cash as revenue for the work of the said seminary. By that means was made good the deficiency in his services—which, although they have not been of moment in war affairs, still were sufficient for him to be granted an encomienda; and on condition of the five thousand pesos he was to be preferred to the others. I am awaiting another similar opportunity in order to get enough to be enabled to finish the work [on a building for them] The services of the fathers of the boys who are reared in this house make up for the deficiency of those who do not furnish services, but who can give like sums. By this means, I believe that the house will be established. But in order that it may have some fixed income, it will be necessary for your Majesty to be pleased to command me to give them one thousand five hundred or two thousand tributes that are vacant. With this the seminary will be placed in good condition, and can have a secular priest as rector to govern it, who will be chosen by the governors. Your Majesty will have the patronage of this boys' seminary, as you have in that of the girls of Santa Potenciana—and at less cost, since all the expenses will be met from encomiendas—than if these had to be enjoyed by worthy men; but their sons will enjoy the encomiendas, since this seminary is founded in order to rear them. [*In the margin*: “[To be considered by] the whole Council. Take it to the fiscal.” “The fiscal says that he does not consider the means employed by the governor to get these five thousand pesos as good, for it really means selling the encomiendas, and giving them for prices to those who do not deserve them. It will result in the general affliction and discontent of the deserving. Consequently, in case that the sum given in this may be approved, the governor must be ordered that no others be given henceforth in like manner. He considers it as better and more suitable that the governor assign some encomiendas for the revenues and income of this seminary, to the quantity that shall be deemed advisable. Thus has it been, and is being, done with other like foundations in Peru and Nueva Espana. Madrid, December 5, 1630.” “That the encomienda given was well done, under the conditions that existed. For the support [of the said seminary], the governor shall continue to impose pensions on the encomiendas up to the sum of one thousand ducados, and shall advise us of what is done.”]



Page 132

Since my arrival, I have had the care of the hospitals of this city, ordered to me by your Majesty in one of your royal decrees received this year. The hospitals are in charge of the discalced religious of St. Francis. I do not doubt that if there were some brothers of [St.] John of God here, they would administer them better; but I have not found them in these islands as yet. I am charging the fathers to look after them carefully, and I personally visit and aid the sick whenever my occupations admit; and I wish that that were often. [*In the margin*: “Thank him, and tell him to continue what he is doing, since it is not advisable to send any of those brothers at present.”]

I wrote at length my opinion in regard to the spiritual matters of the convents and orders, and at present nothing especial occurs to me of which to advise your Majesty. [*In the margin*: “Seen.”]

The characters of Juan Ruiz de Escalona, treasurer of the royal revenues of these islands, and of the accountant, Martin Ruiz de Salazar, are excellent. They attend to their duties with all punctuality and earnest zeal, which deserve from your Majesty the favor that all who comply with their obligations may hope from your royal hand. They are informing you of their especial petitions, and hence I shall not go into greater detail. [*In the margin*: “Let persons of these abilities be kept in mind.”]

The inspector who was assigned to this royal Audiencia has not come this year because of his lack of health, according to what he writes me. That is a pity, for it is important to the service of your Majesty that these islands be inspected. [But that should be done] with the mildness and prudence that is proper; for I do not consider it advisable to unearth old matters that now have no redress, and to investigate them will have no other result than to disturb this community. [*In the margin*: “That this is already provided.”]

This despatch is being made August 4, one day after the arrival at this port of the ships from Nueva Espana. Those ships spent just four months in a voyage that can be and usually is made in less than three, and after suffering innumerable storms and maladies—with the evident risk of leaving these islands without help, because they had not left Nueva Espana a fortnight earlier. Sire, this government, notwithstanding the strenuous efforts of him who may govern here, will be only, what the viceroys of Nueva Espana wish. If aid comes in time and is abundant (or at least sufficient), all goes well and affairs progress, for everything is obtained. If the aid comes late, and does not contain what is necessary, everything is lost and destroyed, as was pointed out more minutely to your Majesty in the letters of war and revenue. I petition you humbly that—although I have come to these islands so desirous of furthering their prosperity, but have found them tied down by undertakings and expenses greater than in the time of my predecessors—since



Page 133

I do not merit being aided as they were, or cannot be aided because of the inclemency of the weather, your Majesty will be pleased to use me in another place where the employment and attainment of my desires is not impossible through the lack of cooperation and outside aid. May God preserve the Catholic royal person of your Majesty with the increase that we, your vassals, desire, and which Christendom needs. Manila, August 4, 1628. Sire, your Majesty's humble vassals,

Don Juan Nino de Tavora

[*In the margin*: "Seen. Have the viceroy charged to be very punctual in this."]

ECONOMIC REASONS FOR SUPPRESSING THE SILK TRADE OF CHINA IN SPAIN AND ITS COLONIES

Reasons of expediency existing why the importation of the silk of China and the other merchandise of that country ought not to be permitted in the Indias and these kingdoms, but rather prohibited; and the damages and troubles that follow from its not being prohibited in every point, and its trade, are the following.

It is very pernicious to permit the importation of the silk of China and its trade, both in the Indias and in Espana. For although not more than two hundred and fifty thousand pesos de Tipuzque can be taken from Nueva Espana to the Filipinas annually, besides that sum another incalculable quantity of money is taken in reals of eight; for the said silk can be bought or traded for nothing else, nor will the Chinese give or exchange it for other merchandise. Consequently, they manage to get hold of and carry away annually the greater part of the eight-real pieces which are made in the said Nueva Espana, in exchange for grass, which is the substance of that coarse and harsh silk which is so plentiful among the Chinese. [53] Thus do they weaken our strength and increase their own; and consequently they can make war on us whenever they wish, without any cost to them as far as we are concerned. And since this money does not come to Espana, it cannot be invested there in merchandise, and the customs duties and the excise duty cannot be collected from them; and they cannot return with a greater sum of money with which to make larger investments, resulting in the great increase of the said royal incomes, and the common benefit of his Majesty's vassals. Besides, if that silk were not taken from China to Nueva Espana, it would not be used there; nor would it be poured into Piru and Tierra Firme, as is done. For, notwithstanding the prohibition established forbidding any merchandise to be taken there from China, a very large quantity of it is taken to the said provinces from Nueva Espana, and it is used there—the viceroys, generals, and justices concealing and favoring it for their own private interest and benefit. For that reason much less Spanish merchandise is used in the said Piru and Tierra Firme than was formerly consumed, and than would be used if the merchandise of China



Page 134

were not sent there. That condition causes the merchandise of Espana to have one-half less value than before. Hence it results that daily fewer trading ships are sent from these kingdoms than formerly, and than would be sent if the said trade with China were to cease. That is the reason why the Spanish silks and other merchandise are so seldom demanded or consumed in the Indias. That, with the low prices at which they are sold, and the numerous duties which are paid, and the trade so ruined, makes the exporters and merchants derive so little gain from their investments that they do not care to increase or to continue their trade, and cease to attend to it. On that account, the said Indias do not depend, as it is right that they should depend, on these kingdoms; while, as there and in these kingdoms is consumed the merchandise of China, which is only bought with standard reals of eight, an enormous amount of coin is taken there in exchange for the merchandise, and thus is not sent to these kingdoms to be invested here, in order to return them to the said Indias. [If that were done], the duties thereon (together with the great cargoes and the increase of business in all directions) would increase very greatly, as would be clearly and quickly seen in the increase of the royal revenues. The prohibition of the said merchandise of China is of much greater advantage to the royal revenues than the permission; besides, it is the universal remedy [for the troubles] of these kingdoms and of the said Indias, that the said merchandise be not exported to either the former or the latter. [There is a parallel to this in our domestic trade], for in place of the wheat (because of the lack of it that is generally experienced in the maritime towns of this kingdom), foreigners are continually carrying away from us so great an amount of money through the permissions given to them for export, and with what they demand besides, for the wheat, and in exchange for the copper coins that they force on us, and other articles that they bring to us, which they have in plenty—but which we do not need, as we have all of them in our Espana. Thus they weaken our resources and strengthen their own; but this would be avoided if we did not need the wheat, and they were not permitted to bring the other things. Just so, not having need (as there is none) of the wares from China, because we have so many of them in these kingdoms (which moreover are known to be so much better in quality), we should cease this trade, which only carries to China that great treasure which is annually withdrawn and conveyed thither, without any hope that any part of it will ever return to us. For the Chinese have a great surplus of all goods, and never come to buy anything, but only to sell—and that only for reals of eight; and consequently, they make their prices so cheap, in order to get the reals, that they constrain one to buy a much greater quantity of their merchandise than he would buy if the prices were higher and the



Page 135

profits less. And although the profits are seemingly large at first, they are not so in reality, because of the little durability of the Chinese goods, and because of the damage caused to the merchandise of Espana by their importation; for, by permitting it, the consumption of Spanish goods is lessened, and they have less value. Consequently—setting aside the so universal damage to all the natives [of Espana], and in particular that to the producers of the said silk (and its production is daily diminishing, to such an extent, indeed, that in a very few years so little will be produced that the damage will be made plainly evident in the royal duties, and in its lack and scarcity), and how much greater benefit would be the prohibition than the permission of the said silk of China—his Majesty and his ministers, in attending to his royal revenues, are under obligation to furnish suitable relief for this, for the welfare of his kingdoms and vassals. Since the towns of the kingdom of Granada were given, after their insurrection, [54] under an annuity obligation [censo] to private persons so that they might settle therein, and the annuity amounts to more than one hundred thousand ducados of revenue, which are paid through the increase in the production of the silk; and [it is necessary] that there should be a ready sale and handling of it, for the estates that were given to them have no other important products from which they could obtain the money to pay the said annuity; necessarily, if the production of the silk ceases, then the payment of the annuity will cease. For in that and in the ready sale of the said silk consists the power [to pay the annuity]; and it also consists in the many people who, having the silk, would occupy themselves in its production, culture, and preparation, who will consume and use a great quantity of food. That would cause an excise duty on the food of more than one hundred thousand additional ducados per year; but this income would cease if the production and cultivation of the silk ceased, and his Majesty would lose the said one hundred thousand ducados. Besides, the said silk paying, as it does, three hundred and two maravedis per libra—without reckoning the tenth, or the forty per cent on the gross price at which it is at once sold in the alcaicerias—as soon as it is sold, while there would be less produced and sold, and the price of it would be lower, the duties will be less. And since the silk of China does not pay more than fifteen per cent of import tax and excise, because it is foreign, his Majesty loses twenty-five per cent on each libra of the silk of the kingdom of Granada. That silk is produced in less quantity by the importation of that of China; and since our silk pays higher duties than the foreign—either because of its excellent quality, or because it is native, or for some other reason—that freedom from duties ought to be extended to it rather than to the Chinese silk, instead of burdening it with



Page 136

greater duties. These latter should be imposed upon the Chinese silk, so that, less of it being imported for that reason, less money would be taken from Nueva Espana to Filipinas for its purchase; while more money would be brought to these kingdoms. That would result in greater investments and cargoes, and more silk would be produced in these kingdoms. For so little silk has been produced in the kingdom of Granada for the last two years, because of its little sale and value and its great cost, that the duties from the revenues of their silk have been worth thirty thousand ducados less each of those two years than they were worth during the years before. Two signal losses have resulted from that, and they will become greater every day, and more irreparable. The first is that as so little silk is produced, and the producers have left the leaves on the mulberry-trees, the trees have come to such a pass that for lack of pruning and care they will be ruined in little time and destroyed—so that when one may try to remedy them he will be unable. The other is that the little silk that has been produced has been of so little profit to the producers because of its diminished value during this time—on account of the quantity of foreign silk that has been imported and its better sale, because of the lower price at which it has been sold—that the said producers and the holders of the annuity grants have not had sufficient means to pay the said annuities; and for the last two years they have owed his Majesty two hundred thousand ducados. It will be impossible to pay that sum and what shall be owing in the future years, as long as the importation and sale of that foreign silk is not prohibited. But if that be done, the production will be increased, and the trade and value [of the Spanish silk] will return to its former figure. By that benefit all the producers will be encouraged to persevere in it, and will cause greater duties, not only for the larger amount of silk that there will be, but in the excise duty for the consumption of food. The producers will have the means to pay what they owe on the annuities that are due and will fall due. And although the silks will be dearer than now, the greater durability of what will be made from them, because of their good quality and worth, will make them cheaper. For if the Chinese silk is not imported, nor ours mixed with it (which is the thing that spoils, harms, and damages ours), what is woven will never break, and will not be dear at any price. The money [now] invested in the silk of China and taken to that country will come to these kingdoms, and will be invested in our silks and merchandise and the returns from them will continue to increase both in the increase of the royal revenues, and in the universal welfare of his Majesty's vassals. Thus will it be seen in a very short time how well advised has been the decision that will be made in the prohibition of the said silks of China, as well as the great damage that



Page 137

its importation has caused. Besides, the danger of navigation will not be so great, because of both its less distance and its greater safety; nor will there be so many losses of ships and property as there are continually now. This trade will proceed with less coercion by the enemies; consequently, the power of the latter will not be so great, nor will the depredations that they commit on our own coasts by robbing us have to be feared. That is all worth very considerable thought, in order that one may see how just is this claim, and so that the remedy for this difficulty be procured, as it is the one that demands reform most urgently of all that now present themselves to our attention.

Juan Velazquez Madroco

[*Endorsed in writing:* [55] "Arguments why the silk of China should not be admitted into the Yndias or into Espana. October 7, 628." "File it with the papers that treat of this matter."]

DECREES REGARDING THE CHINESE

The King. To Don Juan Nino de Tavora, member of my Council of war, my governor and captain-general of the Filipinas Islands, and president of my royal Audiencia therein, or the person or persons in whose charge their government may be: Fray Melchor de Manzano, of the Order of St. Dominic, has reported to me, in the name of the Chinese living in those islands, that the said Chinese pay me annually sixty-four reals in silver for the sole purpose of remaining in that country, in addition to five more, which is the usual tribute, and twelve more for the treasury, which are spent in assessments for affairs of my service; and that, for a few years back, the alcaldes-mayor have introduced the practice that no Chinese enter or live in their districts without their permission (even though they have yours), and the permission given by the alcaldes-mayor is for a very short period, in order to get from them the fees for the said permission very frequently. Although orders have been issued in this matter by that Audiencia of mine, prohibiting the granting of the said permissions, those orders have not been obeyed. On the contrary, those officials proceed in their own interest, and oblige the Chinese at the same time to attend to the service of the city, by going to fish and to provide all the necessaries of life; and, whenever they go they experience many annoyances. He petitions me that I will be pleased to order that, since the Chinese pay so large fees to live in that country, the permissions that you shall grant them be valid in all the districts of the said alcaldes-mayor; and that the latter take no other fee, or the former have no need of any other permission, besides yours; and that for yours not more than one real in silver be collected. If the expedition made by the said Chinese should not last longer than one month, the permission of the alcalde-mayor of their district will be sufficient, and they shall not be obliged to get another in that



Page 138

place to which they go, within the said month. That given by the said alcalde-mayor shall not carry fees in excess of one-half real. If the alcalde-mayor of the Parian grant such permission, he shall collect no fee, since the said Chinese pay ten pesos to him, and the same amount to the clerk of the salary fund. Having examined the matter in my royal Council of the Indias, I have considered it advisable to refer the matter herein contained to you, so that you may provide that the said Chinese be not annoyed or molested, in order that there may be no occasion for their coming to complain; and you shall advise the said my royal Council of the Indias of the correction that you shall apply in this matter. Madrid, June 8, 1628

I The King By order of the king our sovereign: *Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras*

The King. To the president and auditors of my royal Audiencia resident in the city of Manila of the Filipinas Islands: Fray Melchor Manzano, of the Order of Preachers, in the name of the Chinese living in those islands has reported to me that it has been ordered for the security of the islands that the Chinese live in the village of the Parian, outside the walls of that city; but that for a few years past they have been scattered among different settlements outside of the said village. There with difficulty can the wrongs experienced at various times by such settlements be righted, as many of them do not go to mass or hear the word of God, but indulge in excessive gambling, to their own hurt and that of the inhabitants of that city. Any insurrection can easily be feared because they can arrange one very safely in the said settlements, where they can hold secret assemblies and meetings—from which resulted the impositions, false testimonies one against another, and false witnesses; and the fortifications of the walls of that city are in great danger. For if the said Chinese live in the village of the Parian, one can derive from that means to fortify the walls and prevent destruction and losses; but if they live outside the Parian, that will be lacking, and consequently the safety of that city [will be endangered]. I have been petitioned that I be pleased to order, under severe penalties, that no Chinese be permitted to have a dwelling outside the Parian; and that those now outside return there, except the married Christians who may live in the village of Vindanoc [i.e., Binondo], which has been assigned to them. Having examined the matter in my royal Council of the Indias, I have considered it fitting to refer the matter to you, so that you may proceed in it with all the haste that may be advisable for the service of God our Lord and my own, in order that those troubles cease. You shall advise me of what you shall do, on the first opportunity. Madrid, August 17, 1628.

I The King

By order of his Majesty:
Don Fernando Ruiz de Contreras



Page 139

The King. To Don Juan Nino de Tavora, member of my Council of War, my governor and captain-general of the Filipinas Islands, and president of my royal Audiencia therein, or the person or persons in whose charge their government may be: I ordered you by a decree of September 10, 627, to appoint to the office of protector of the Sangley Chinese (which was held by the fiscal of that Audiencia) a person who should prove competent, with the salary that was assigned to him; and to order that my said fiscal of those regions exercise the office no longer. You were ordered to charge the person whom you thus appointed to watch over the said Sangley Chinese most carefully, so that they might not be troubled or annoyed, or any ill-treatment shown them; and that any balance left any year in the fund that he keeps should remain there, in order that the Sangleys may be assessed so much less the following year. When that order was executed, you were to inform me of what had been done and what took place in respect to those who are mentioned in the said decree, as well as the advantages or troubles that its execution might cause, as is contained more in detail in the decree, to which I refer. Doctor Don Juan de Quesada Hurtado de Mendoza, whom I have appointed as my fiscal of that Audiencia, has reported to me that, having petitioned that the documents be given to him as to his predecessors, and one of them being the decree that orders that the fiscal of that my Audiencia be the protector of the natives and the Sangleys, he found that the above decree had been despatched, ordering you to appoint a competent person. The cause therefor was that Fray Melchor Manzano, of the Order of St. Dominic, urged it for private purposes, until he actually obtained it. The fiscal declared that it was advisable for my service to have the decree suspended, and that my fiscals of that Audiencia exercise the said office, as they had always done; and that the said Fray Melchor Manzano, while he was in those islands, and other religious of his order, having made themselves protectors of the said Sangleys, and having petitioned the governor to order that the fiscal be not the protector of them, and that the salary of whoever should be protector be moderated, the said governor did not change the custom of whether the fiscal should or should not be the protector. In regard to the salary, it was moderated only to eight hundred pesos. When the matter came before that my Audiencia, it declared by acts of examination and review that the said protection pertained to the said my fiscal. In consideration of that, Don Fernando de Silva, my governor *ad interim* of those islands, ordered that the said acts be executed; and that, in conformity with them, the office of protector of natives and Sangleys be exercised by Licentiate Marcos Zapata de Galvez, my fiscal of that my Audiencia at that time. I am petitioned, in consideration of that, to be pleased to have a decree despatched



Page 140

ordering that he and other fiscals who shall succeed him in that my Audiencia be protectors of the said Sangleys and natives, as they have been, notwithstanding the ruling of the said decree of September 10, 627. Having examined the matter in my royal Council of the Indias, together with what Licentiate Juan Pardo, my fiscal therein, stated and alleged—for I wish to know whether the Sangleys have need of that protector and whether they ask for him—I order you to inform me of what you find out concerning this; and in case that it appears necessary that they have one, I order you and that Audiencia to appoint six persons who may be suitable for such protector. You shall cause such nominations to be sent to the said my Council, so that it may indicate that one of the six appointees who is most suitable. He must not have trade or business relations with the said Sangleys; and the one named by the said Council shall be, for the time being, the one who shall seem most suitable to the Council. Madrid, March 27, 1629.

I The King

By order of his Majesty:
Andres de Rozas

RELATIONS OF 1628-29

I

Relation of affairs in the Filipinas and in other regions, for the year of 1628 and 629, sent by the fathers [of the Society]; and of a victory gained by our men.

An excellent and large fleet has left this great island of Mindanao during these last few days to punish the insolence of the Dutch and of the Joloans, the neighbors of Mindanao, who are robbing the country from us and capturing the Indians of these Filipinas. The fleet is there, and I was to embark with it, but in order not to leave this district alone Father Fabricio Sersali, a Sicilian, went. The fleet consisted of thirty ships and more, and in them sailed two hundred Spaniards and innumerable Indian soldiers and rowers. May our Lord give us the success that we hope. [56]

A fleet of two galleons with high freeboard has also left, and in them four companies of soldiers, in pursuit of the Dutch enemy who were in Macan and along the coast of Great China. Advices were received of a Dutch ship which was carrying one million pesos' worth of wealth. The result has not been ascertained as yet.

[*Word in MS. illegible*] On March 13, fire fell from heaven upon the Parian or fair of the Chinese (according to what they themselves swear, namely, that they saw it fall), and



burned it all, without a single one of the more than eight hundred houses that it contained being left; and the only thing that was left standing was a church which was in the Parian. [57] The Parian of Manila and almost all the city of Zebu were burned, with great loss.



Page 141

The fleet which went from the province of Oton to punish Jolo has arrived at this very moment. I shall relate here a very fortunate result that our Lord gave them. It is as follows. The island of Jolo is next to that of Mindanao. The fleet left here, as I said, on the first of April. At dawn of Holy Saturday it reached the mouth of the river of Jolo, and entering it and attacking the village, the enemy fled as a single man to the mountain, so that the energy of all our men was directed to pillaging. The sack amounted to thirty thousand pesos. What was pillaged from the house of the king amounted to six thousand pesos in silk, cloth, wax, huge quantities of wax, innumerable weapons, and other things of great value. It was all divided among the villagers. That news was one of the best which this country has heard, as that enemy was the one who does us most harm. Father Fabricio Sersali, who was with the fleet, preceded them all with an image of St. Francis Xavier raised on a spear. In this manner did the aged saint enter the mosque, and leap for joy. Now boats are being prepared in this town of Arebalo to complete the uprooting from these islands of those nations who disturb them. They burned the town, and the house of the king, the mosque, and the rice which they could not carry away. They felled the palm trees, so that they might deprive those people of support. They did all that in one day. They burned one hundred and forty ships—forty large ones and the others of less burden. Such and such people were captured; and then they set out on their return in high spirits, in order to go out another time, for which they are preparing. Oton, May 30, 628.

Hernando Estrada [58]

Will your Reverence aid me with your holy sacrifices and prayers, so that I may imitate many apostolic laborers whom we have had here, and of whom we have at present many, who have come from all those provinces of Espana; they have made and are making gardens pleasant to the sight of God, from the obscure forests which the devil has possessed so many thousands of years and still possesses in these islands. For, as we have been told, there are eleven thousand islands, of which that of Manila is the largest and most important. It has more Christians [than the others], and yet even in it there are many infidels, who make war on us. Among the other islands there are very few [with Christians] because of the many which are so full of infidel people who profess the devilish worship of Mahoma. I cannot depict to your Reverence how surrounded we are by that canaille on all sides, and the wars that they so frequently make upon us—so that, in the summer especially, no one can be safe in his house. Daily do they enter our villages, burn them and their churches, break into bits the saints and images, and capture the poor Indians.



Page 142

I left Manila in a champan, which is a boat used by the Chinese, and in which they come from their country here. We were four of the Society who embarked in it, and God was pleased to give it so favorable a wind that by means of it we escaped from the hands of the enemy, who were in ambush, watching for an opportune moment. The father-provincial [59] took the same route in a caracoa—a boat used in this country; but that craft was knocked to pieces before reaching the place where the enemy had established themselves. Hence it was necessary for him and his associate to come overland, suffering extraordinary hardships, over mountains and through rivers, for more than one hundred leguas. Thus does it seem that they escaped as by a miracle, as well as did the champan.

Soon thirty or more boatloads of Camuzones Indians arrived here. They were naked, having only a bit of cloth with which they cover, *etc.* Their weapons are certain pointed bamboos, but those bamboos are very strong. They entered a village which was under my charge, and burned it, together with its house and church. They broke the saints into pieces, although the ornaments were saved. Nine persons were captured here.

Another brother and I were going to another village, without thought of enemies. We entered the bar of a river at about one in the afternoon. That afternoon the enemy entered the same river. The next day, while we were giving thanks, they made a sudden attack on the village, whereupon all the people fled. We two went to the mountains, where we remained eleven days. Thence the enemy took their way toward another village, where the father-provincial was, together with Father Juan Lopez, [60] his associate, and other fathers. Before the enemy arrived, they received the warning which I sent them. Consequently, all took to the mountains, and the father-provincial and the other fathers were among the mountains for a number of days, where they suffered hardships. But our Lord was pleased to order that the enemy should not reach that village nor the village where I was staying, for fear of the narrowness of the rivers, lest they could not get through them when they departed. But they went thence to another town located on the seashore, and burned it entirely. The enemy also went to other villages of our missions and burned them, and the fathers escaped as by a miracle from their hands. When the enemy capture the fathers they cut off their heads, as they did two years ago with a father whom they captured. They treat the Spaniards whom they capture in the same way. Consequently, we all go about as if we were soldiers; our ships are laden with arms; and forts have been built in the chief villages and fortified with firearms, with which to defend ourselves; while forts are being built in the other villages.

All those coasts of this sea have been crowded with sentinels this year, for it was rumored that many Dutch ships were to come, and they always come to sight land at the cape of Espiritu Santo.



Page 143

When we go from some villages to others, we cross many deep rivers, which are all generally full of caymans or crocodiles. These [reptiles] swallow a bull, a cow, or a deer even to their horns, thus causing great loss. They also catch and eat the Indians daily.

There is a most abundant quantity of snakes, almost all of which cause death when they sting. There is but one remedy for the wounds, namely, if they happen to have a little of the earth from San Pablo. By having it blessed, they are infallibly cured; and he who is treated with this remedy does not die. There are other snakes which are not poisonous. They are so large that they can swallow a large wild boar, or a large deer, horns and all. A father and some Indians killed one which was eating a hog; they ran up on hearing the grunts of the hog, and speared and killed the snake.

There is great abundance of material products, and the country is very fertile. The grain of these regions is rice, and as a rule each fanega of grain sowed yields one hundred fanegas, and many yield two hundred fanegas, especially if it is irrigated and transplanted. There are oranges of many varieties, some of them resembling large melons. Honey and wax is found in the trees, where the bees make it. The wax is worth sixteen or twenty reals an arroba, and a jar of honey one real. I saw a tree which had many honeycombs hanging on the branches. The mountains are fuller of wild boars than are the commons of Espana of swine and cattle in acorn time. One of those swine, if it is fat, is worth two reals, but only one if not fat; and a deer is worth the same sum. There are almost no fruits of Espana. There are melons, cucumbers, pumpkins, and radishes of the country, and quantities of cabbages and lettuce. There are many native fruits, some of which are excellent, but they are not so many or so good as those of Espana, while the food does not have the same nourishment as in Espana. The swine here are excellent, and better and more healthful than those of Espana; for they are eaten like mutton, and are given to the sick as mutton is in Espana.

God is ever our physician and apothecary in sickness, and but few times does one fall grievously sick when our Lord does not supply the lack of medicines, without which [MS. *holed*: we?] get along very well, and God helps [us]. Panbohen, July 6, 1629.

Pedro de Prado

We received a letter from Eastern India which gives very good news of its condition; for the Dutch are now in small numbers and are very much discredited, with both the Moros and the heathen, and these have revolted against the Dutch and driven them from their lands and from the houses of trade that they owned, because they have found them false in their commerce and deceitful in their trading. Our men went to help drive out the Dutch.

Good news comes from Zeilan and Tebet of the great conversion to Christianity that is being effected there and in other regions, and that the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ continues to increase.



Page 144

Ruy Freire went to besiege Ormuz with some ships, and the viceroy told him that he was going in person with [MS. *holed*] ships to capture it.

Father Geronimo Perez [61] had cut down, at a residence, a tree which was called nino, in order to dispel the superstitions of the Indians. That tree was twenty-five brazas in circumference, and there are other trees of this species whose trunks are used by the Indians as houses. [62]

Father Muxica writes from Macan that Father Trigautio had come from China to Macan, and said that there were many highborn and influential people in China who were being converted, and that they were living very exemplary lives. Manila, July 5, 1628 [*sic*].

II

A relation of events in the Philipinas Islands, and other neighboring kingdoms, from the month of July, 1628, to July, 1629.

Continuing my project begun last year, I will proceed in this account to relate the events which have happened this year, without observing any other order than that in which they occur to me.

At half past one on the night of November 25, Our church fell, with so terrible a crash that it seemed as if the heavens were falling. It was due to God's great providence that it did not happen several hours later, for without doubt some of our fathers would have been caught in the ruins. It is the third time that this church has fallen; for years ago, just as they finished saying the last mass, and locked the doors, the whole vault, which was built of brick, fell in a great earthquake. If it had happened an hour before, it would have wrought great injury, by imprisoning beneath it all the people who were in the church. Then six years later, in the month of September, on the same day, just as they were beginning to decorate the church for celebrating the feasts of St. Ignatius and St. Xavier, one large pillar and two arches fell, leaving the roof in the air, without any means of support for more than eight yards—a thing which seemed miraculous; two of Ours were caught, but neither received much harm. On this last occasion the ruin was greater, because one pillar, when it fell, carried with it half of the church. Thus it remained, without repairs being possible; there was nothing to be done but to finish the work of destruction, and build a hut in which to accommodate our fathers in their ministries, until we finish the new church building and house—which is a very good one, and well on its way to completion. [63]

On the twentieth of December, at eight o'clock in the evening, they omitted the holy sacrament in the Cathedral church of this city, because it had been stolen, together with the monstrance in which it was kept. Diligent search was made for it, arresting some and putting others to the torture, and making earnest prayers to placate the wrath of

God, but no trace of the thief could be found in these or any other ways, even to the present day. [64]



Page 145

On the twentieth of June an eclipse of the sun began at eleven o'clock, and at thirteen minutes after twelve it was so far eclipsed that it could not be seen at all. It seemed as if it were night, and the stars were seen in the sky, so that we were forced to light candles in order to eat; for there was a dinner that afternoon, on the occasion of a certain feast. As far as I know, this eclipse was not seen in Nueva Espana; it is the most complete one that I have ever seen, though I have seen many.

On the eighteenth of July last, in the village of Guiguan, which is a mission of the Society, an image of the Immaculate Conception of Our Lady with a gilded face, began to weep piteously—in the sight of all, and of the father who was expounding Christian doctrine in that village—with a saddened countenance, to the great terror of all who were present. It seemed as if this was the announcement of the disasters and calamities which have been suffered by those poor islands of the Pintados (which are in our missionary charge) from their enemies the Camucones and the Joloans, who have become very insolent—plundering many ships on the sea, some of them valuable; robbing and burning towns, capturing the people, and destroying the images, which the fathers have kept well until their flight and refuge in the mountains. It has been considered a singular providence that no one of our fathers has been captured (although there are fears about one, but nothing certain is known about it). The enemy suddenly landing, one father was surprised in bed, but made his escape almost in his shirt; they surprised another while saying mass, and he was obliged to make his escape in his chasuble, fleeing through the marshes; another they found sprinkling with holy water the whole population of the town in the church; another they met on the sea, and having given chase to his vessel, the father leaped overboard and finally escaped. The father provincial was in great danger several times, but in the end God preserved him and all the other fathers. The greatest hardship is, that it seems as if those who conduct the government do not endeavor to check these raids; may the Lord do so by restraining the enemies.

Relief was sent this year to the Malucas Islands, as has usually been done in past years, in several pataches and a galley. The Dutch enemy had at their Malayo fort (which is almost within sight of our fort at Terrenate), a very powerful ship which passed in front of our fort several times discharging their artillery as if defying us to come out and fight. After this bravado our men and Pedro de Heredia, governor of those fortifications, armed two pataches and the galley (a force much inferior to that of so powerful a ship) and went out to meet the enemy. He boarded it and began to attack the soldiers in it; the enemy, seeing that the fight was going against them, cut loose from our ship, and retreated or fled to their fort. There their people arrested the captain, because, although he had had the advantage on his side, he had not sunk our little pataches, but instead had taken to flight. Some of the Dutch and some of our men were killed in this fight.



Page 146

At Xacatra, which is the capital of the Dutch possessions in all these eastern regions, and at which their governor and captain-general resides, there have been many harassing wars this year, because King Xabo with a very powerful army had besieged them for many months, seized and burned the suburbs, and killed many men. However, on account of the many winter floods, Xabo had to retreat; but the Dutch are left in considerable fear lest he will return, with the Portuguese giving him assistance. On that account they have still further fortified their forts, made greater provision of all necessaries, and detailed there six galleons from the great fleet, which they maintain at Ormus for the aid and defense of the Persian, [65] in order that the Portuguese, who are threatening that fortress, may not recover it.

With the aim of relieving these islands and their natives from the suffering that they endured in building galleys and ships, the governor decided to send some Spaniards to the kingdom of Camboja, which abounds in fine woods, to establish dock-yards; this purpose was carried out. With the Spaniards it was decided to send some of the Society, but for certain reasons this was not done, nor would we permit it. The fathers of St. Dominic, however, permitted it; and so some of them went there with the Spaniards, and were very well received by the king of Camboja. They immediately commenced to carry out their plans for the ships, while the religious built a church. The king gave them permission to baptize and convert to Christianity any persons in his kingdom who wished it.

I wrote last year, that, annoyed by the injuries which these islands had received from the king of Sian, who had seized in one of his ports a ship of ours richly laden with silks, our galleons had gone there and made reprisals on some of his ships. The latest news is that a ship was sent there with some of the Sianese who were captured, and some Spaniards, to give an account of the affair; and to tell the king that our people desired to continue in peace and friendship, but that he must satisfy us for what he had seized from us, and in return we would satisfy him for what we had seized from his people. As yet we have had no answer from there, nor have we heard how the matter was concluded—much less if our fathers who reside there lost their lives when our galleons did so much damage to the Sianese ships.

The outlook for Christianity in Cochinchina was very promising, and in the year 1627 eight hundred adults were baptized; but this year we have had news that the fathers had encountered adverse fortune, and were fearing expulsion from that kingdom—but now they write that the tempest has already abated, and the skies are clearing.

In late years, there have been many wars in the kingdom of Tongin, which adjoins that of Cochinchina; but the Christians have been left in peace, and thus many have been converted to Christianity. It is even reported that this same king and a brother of his had been or were to be baptized. Would to Heaven that it were so! although hitherto there has been no certainty of anything, because we have had no letters from our fathers, on account of the said wars.



Page 147

The Tartars have again revolted against the Chinese, who are so hard pressed that they have sent to Macan for artillerymen and artillery for the war. The Portuguese lent them two heavy guns, and thirty men to go with them, among whom was Father Palmerin, the visitor of that province [*in the margin*: in the secular habit], to visit, on this occasion, the houses and the residences in China.

As to the condition of Christianity in Japon, I cannot better give account than by inserting here letters and relations sent from there. The first, dated 1627, reads as follows:

“The persecution of the Christians here, which was begun several years ago, continues without any remission of its vigor, but rather increases with every day—not throughout the whole kingdom, however, but in certain parts of the Xymo or Tacab, in which the Christians are persecuted more than they have been hitherto. It commenced among the Christian converts of Tacacu and the lands of Arima, by soliciting the tono of that region, Gentir, to return to the favor of the lord of Japon, of which he has been deprived for some time, and to dissuade from the faith all the Christians who should enter his lands. An official was sent to all places with orders that they should not fail to go through every village, and to cause everyone, by any way or means whatever, to renounce the faith, in order that they might instead adopt one of the Japanese sects. The officials obeyed their orders and searched out all, whether steadfast or wavering; and some, in order not to risk their faith, left their homes secretly. Some of the strong ones were rigorously treated, and others gently, among whom some exiled themselves. Those Christians suffered, for their constancy, various and extreme torments never before seen in Japon, which at the said tono’s command were inflicted in order to subdue them—stripping both men and women, and hanging them in their shame; hurling them from a height into cold water, in the depth of winter; placing them near a fire so that they would burn; and burning them with lighted torches. Two of them they roasted on burning coals, as St. Laurence suffered. Others were left so that they died in a few days. They also burned the men with a hot iron upon the forehead, leaving the word “Christian” stamped upon it. They cut the fingers from the hands, even of children, inflicting other indignities that cannot be written. The inhuman pagan, not content with this, had some men and women conducted through the streets of certain villages with insignia of dishonor commonly applied among the heathen to criminals, but of great glory to our Lord God, for whose love they suffered. When the servants of the Lord arrived at some of these places, they bound them in a shameful manner to stakes, in order to frighten the Christian inhabitants in this fashion; but with all their efforts they were not strong enough to conquer any Christian, or make him recant. Forty-seven, of all ages,



Page 148

were condemned to death; three were beheaded, and the rest drowned in the sea. Eighteen others, of all ages, they took to a mountain, where there were some very hot baths; and, binding them with ropes, they put them into the water, asking them again and again if they would not recant. Seeing their constancy, they bound them to stones, with which they were sunk in the sea. Twenty-six others, of varying ages, they also took to the said baths; and having especially distinguished ten of these by torments, they kept them for some time on the edge of the baths, repeatedly asking them if they would give up their religion. At the same time they poured upon their shoulders jars of that boiling hot water, drawing from them cries of pain; until, becoming convinced of their constancy, they drowned them in the said baths. Because the body of one of them was not burst open like the rest by the heat of the water, they cut it open in various places with a knife. In this torture he died, and, like the others, was flung into the baths. Adding to these two others who died of the terrible torture inflicted upon them, the number of those who died in the province of Tacacu, by fire, blood, and water was forty-seven. They went to rest and abide with Christ, and will always be able to say with David: *Transivimus per ignem et aqua e reduxisti nos in refrigerium*. [66] We would never finish if we undertook to tell in detail all the particulars of these martyrdoms, which we shall leave for a more extended relation, in which they may be viewed; and great consolation will be had from the fact that those Christians have endured such atrocious and unheard-of torments with such constancy, for the love of Christ.

“Let us speak of the persecution which another pagan tano set in motion against the Christians in his lands, adjacent to those of Tacacu. They buried three of the martyrs whom the tano of Tacacu had condemned, and three others were captured who were going there; he ordered them to recant if they wished to save their lives, or else they would be subjected to various torments, but these they suffered rather than lose the life of the soul. Besides this, the Japanese persecuted the Christians of that town, and others near by, trying every means in their power to divert them from our holy faith. Some of them were steadfast, and others wavered. The tano, however, ordered them not to kill anyone then as a Christian, and this order was obeyed—although two widows, named Maria, gave a noble [*word illegible in MS.*] in order to show that they were more constant. They insulted these women in many ways, putting them to shame; and finally, as they were triumphant over every injury and torment, they were set free. Then they hastened to the city of Nangasaqui, the chief of Christian communities in Japon, where on August 16, 1627, they arrested and burned alive father Fray Francisco de Santa Maria, and the lay brother, Fray Bartholome, both Franciscans, together with their



Page 149

servants and other men and women. Others they beheaded, among whom the lot fell to a woman with three children, two of whom were two years old and the other older. On the sixth of September of the same year, they arrested and burned alive a Japanese father of Ours, together with two chiefs, his servants. The governor and president of that city was present at all these murders. He, in conformity with his orders, tried to make all the Christian inhabitants recant, without respect to age or estate, and to persuade them all to adopt some one of the Japanese sects, making use of many ingenious artifices for this purpose. Seeing that he could not effect his purpose, he tried locking some of them in their houses, nailing up the doors, and depriving them of all communication with relatives and friends, to which end he set guards around them. Some weak-spirited persons obeyed him; but the greater number, both chiefs and common people, resisted him. The governor, seeing that so many resisted, as he had no orders to take their lives, but only to send them as prisoners to the court, sent those whom he thought best, and among them fifteen of the most prominent persons. Fearing because some of these were persons of rank, and had many relatives, and some of them were actually officials in the same city, in order to prevent any revolt from arising he asked the neighboring tonos for a large number of soldiers. A great many of these came, who were lodged throughout the city; but, seeing that there was no resistance he ordered them back to their fortresses, and, the confessors being much rejoiced, he sent them prisoners to the court. Others are kept in captivity until the arrival of a decree from the court. Four distinguished families were exiled to Macan, with four hundred and thirty of the common people, who were driven to the neighboring mountains as a warning and intimidation to many others, and all intercourse and communication with them was cut off. It was ordered that no one should admit them to their houses. They were commanded not to build huts, even for the infant children, to defend them from the inclemencies of the weather. Guards were set over them so that no one should grant them even a mat for their shelter, the persecutors hoping by this means to bend them to their will. Although the confessors of Christ undergo great suffering, they do so with joy and invincible constancy. Others who were not banished were deprived of their employment, to force them to abandon their resistance. Many fled for this reason, leaving the most populous city in Japan almost depopulated, although it still contains confessors who ennoble it. [67]



Page 150

“On the twenty-ninth of July of this year (1627) they burned alive at Omura, together with another who wished to accompany them, a Dominican father and three domestics, who had been kept in close captivity since the year 1626. This persecution was begun because, having confiscated the property belonging to the Franciscan fathers in Nangasaqui, they found a list in which those fathers enumerated the servants and houses which each one possessed in the land of Omura; and because they had sent a ship with a cargo of flour to Manila, in order to bring religious to Japon on its return—although those of Omura were more than twice advised by the religious of Nangasaqui to consider that it was against the Japanese law, and that by so doing they were exposing themselves and others to the risk of destruction, by furnishing pagans and renegade Christians with a pretext to persecute them, especially the religious at the port from which the ship sailed. Twenty-five of the constant ones were murdered—of all ages, men and women—some for having displayed their constancy, and others for admitting religious into their houses. Among others who died by burning alive, one, a good laboring woman, was especially distinguished, whom, because she was discovered to have admitted religious to her house, they exposed to public shame, taking her in this manner for more than twenty leguas round about. Finally, she was burned alive, ever displaying the most remarkable constancy. The same fortitude was shown by three men, whom they buried up to their shoulders. Another who saw some one being burned alive, displayed no less courage; for, filled with fervor, he voluntarily plunged into the flames, where he was entirely consumed. All these were martyred at Omura for their faith, or for receiving religious into their houses. More than forty were executed for sending the said ship, and even now the punishment is not concluded. Thus that Christian community, one of the earliest in Xapon, is greatly afflicted [*apparently some words missing in MS.*] in order that it may be preserved and aided.

“From the kingdom of Figen, they passed to that of Fingo. At Amacusa, in Fingo, there was no general persecution, leaving the chiefs and laborers, so that if it were conducted rigorously with all, some would be found to be weak-spirited. However, they martyred one man, who showed unusual constancy. At the end of this year 1627, this Christian church had devoted one hundred and eight martyrs to the Lord. In other parts of Japon the Christians and their ministers were left in comparative quiet, so that in the year 1626 their ranks were increased by more than two thousand converts who were baptized by members of our Society, to say nothing of those who were baptized by religious of other orders. We believe that in the year 27 there will be a still greater number of converts in the kingdom of Oxu, because in this kingdom (which is the farthest in Japon) many of the people are well disposed. There are at present there four of Ours, five Franciscans, and one Augustinian. May the Lord assist them there in all Xapon, opening doors so long locked, through which many others can enter.”



Page 151

This is the first relation. The second is a letter from the father provincial of Xapon, Matheo de Couros, dated February 25, 1626. It reads as follows: "The Xongu [i.e., shogun] lives with his queen, obeyed and feared by all. There is no human hope of any change here. All these kingdoms enjoy considerable peace during the tempest, and Christianity only is persecuted with fire and sword. From others you may have learned that the Franciscan fathers sent a ship to the city of Manila. This has more than twice resulted in the total destruction of Christian work in Omura; and its lord, although he is a child, runs the risk that they will behead him (or at least his governors), because the said ship was fitted out in one of his ports. We do not know how this will end. On January 21, they arrested Father Antonio of the Franciscan order at Nangasaqui. The embassy of the Dutch had an unfortunate ending at the court of Xapon, because it was known to be only a pretext. It is also said that one of the great governors of Xapon remarked at court that it would be a great injury to that kingdom, were it said that they welcomed in their ports a people who came only to rob upon the high seas, and that it was taken ill in foreign kingdoms."

In another letter, of November 28, 1627, it is said by Father Xacome Antonio, after the departure of the galeotas, that "there is no news from these countries; the persecution at Nangasaqui has ended, because the presidents had all gone to the court, and so at present there is comparative quiet. At first those who were banished to the mountains were not allowed, under the penalty of burning, imposed by the ministers of justice, to build any shelter from the inclemencies of the weather; but afterward they were allowed to build huts of straw. It was also granted that no minister of justice dwell among them, which is a great blessing. The Christians who were sent to court arrived there in safety; and although at the beginning they found no one to welcome them the governors afterward ordered that houses be given them. They are well accommodated in a monastery of bonzes, who, beyond the kind treatment they accord them, are urging the governors to accord to them, and to the other Christians at Nangasaqui, liberty of conscience. The chief bonze of this monastery, a man of great authority on account of his dignity, is pushing this negotiation. Besides this, these same Christians presented a petition or memorial, asking the governors at this court to intercede for them, and procure for them such liberty at Nangasaqui as they had had in the days of the Daifu, so that their inhabitants might live there as Christians. It was well received, and they were given hopes of a favorable decision. The same encouragement is given to all those who come to the court. Even the heathen talk of it, and say that the permission will doubtless be accorded. May the Lord grant it; for if it succeeds the whole country in the neighborhood of Nangasaqui will remain in some peace."



Page 152

In another of March 16, 1628, the same father, Xacome Antonio, says that father Fray Juan de Ribera, of the Dominican order, while he was returning from Manila to Xapon, was left on the Lechios [i.e., Riu-Kiu Islands], where it is said that he was murdered in an attempt to rob him, though the motive is not certainly known. Three of the same order came last year to Japon, and when they were within sight of land, the Chinese crews threw them overboard, on account of some superstitious fear. It was known afterward, because on their return a sudden squall struck the Chinese ship two leguas from Nangasaqui. The vessel was wrecked and many lost, eight saving their lives by swimming. This was a punishment for their sins, and for the large amount of silver that they took from the said religious, which they say must amount to two thousand sacks of treasure; [68] they took it on condition of returning the same amount at their return from the voyage.

The last news we have from Xapon is as follows: There was a great outbreak in the palace, in the emperor's anteroom, and a tono among great governors of the kingdom was killed. The emperor came forth at the noise, and, attempting to put his hand upon his sword, he was foully stabbed in the abdomen, an example showing how skilled they are in wielding arms. This death has caused much restlessness, and many risings, which will not be crushed for a long time. The Indians of the island of Hermosa sent ambassadors to the emperor of Xapon, asking for assistance to help them expel the Dutch from that port where they have their fortress. They were well received and help was offered to them, and they were sent back with assurances of friendship. The Dutch themselves were arrested in Xapon and their ships detained, because they owed large sums and did not pay; and there was talk of expelling them from the entire land of Xapon. Just then, unfortunately for us, news arrived there of the Japanese ship that our galleons burned last year on the bar of Sian, [69] whereupon the tables were turned; the prospects of the Dutch improved, and ours grew worse. There was talk of making an agreement with them, and even of raising an armada of Dutch and Japanese, to proceed against our fort at the island of Hermosa and even against Manila—a matter which does not fail to occasion considerable anxiety, though it is not known how it will turn out.

We have had no news from the island of Hermosa, which keeps us in great anxiety, because more than two hundred thousand pesos were sent there from this city of Manila to be invested in Chinese silks. We do not know what has been done with it, or whether the money has been lost, an uncertainty which occasions anxiety to the merchants. In short, these Philipinas Islands are at present in a ruinous condition, with many powerful and triumphant enemies, our forces weakened, and our people in dread of other large fleets. May the Lord remedy all this, and assist with His divine favor, in the preservation of the faith in these lands. Manila, July 18, 1629.



Page 153

[A document of this same collection ("Papeles de los Jesuitas"), with pressmark "Tomo 169 numero 2," is identical with the above relation, except for slight verbal differences which do not change the sense in any way. But at the end occurs the following additional letter:]

Letter of Father Sebastian de Morais

Since the letters carried by the little ship from India are lost, the following was learned from another letter. On the octave of Espiritu Santo, a sudden attack was made from Fayal Island to Tercera Island, as a little ship from India, called "San Felipe," was making port there. That ship left Cochin December 22, 1629, and reached Fayal seven days after Pentecost. There it was met by an English ship which mounted twenty-four pieces, many carrying balls of sixteen libras. It had sixty musketeers, while our ship had only thirty white men and twenty Indians, and mounted fourteen small pieces of artillery. However we cut down the yard of the pirate's foremast with the first volley. They fought one day and night. They killed our master and two sailors, and our men killed the enemy's captain and many of their men, while the ship was so hardly used that it would have sunk but for the calking. Our ship bore down upon it; but another pirate, of heavier burden, appeared within range. Consequently, our ship retired to Fayal, where some ships from the island of Terceras went to get it. They cast anchor at that point with great rejoicing, our ship being quite like a sieve because of the balls that remained sticking in its sides and upper works. Even that image of our patron saint, St. Philip, had in it eighteen balls. The ship carries three thousand five hundred quintals of pepper for the king, and a quantity of merchandise. The ships of General Roque Senteno were going for it [as convoy].

A fleet of forty sail had gone to Socotra against the enemy, with volunteer forces, who were encouraged by the sight of a crucifix which the enemy had insulted on a certain occasion. We had a glorious victory over many galleys of the [king] of Achen, although our craft were very inferior.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DATA

Most of the documents in this volume are obtained from MSS. in the Archivo general de Indias, Sevilla; their pressmarks are indicated thus:

1. *Report of Spanish Council*.—"Simancas—Secular; Audiencia de Filipinas; consultas originales correspondientes a dicha Audiencia; anos 1586 a 1636; est 67, caj. 6, leg. 1."
2. *Letter from Serrano, 1625*.—"Simancas—Eclesiastico; Audiencia de Filipinas; cartas y expedientes dei arzobispo de Manila vistos en el Consejo; anos 1579 a 1679; est. 68, caj. 1, leg. 32."

3. *Letter from Fernando de Silva, 1625.*—"Simancas-Secular; Audiencia de Filipinas; cartas y expedientes del gobernador de Filipinas vistos en el Consejo; anos 1600 a 1628; est. 67, caj. 6, leg. 7."



Page 154

4. *Letter from Serrano*, 1626.—The same as No. 2.
 5. *Letter from Fernando de Silva*, 1626.—The same as No. 3.
 6. *Letter from sisters of St. Clare*.—“Simancas—Eclesiastico; Audiencia de Filipinas; cartas y expedientes de personas eclesiasticas de Filipinas; anos 1609 a 1644; est. 68, caj. 1, leg. 43.”
 7. *Petition for aid to seminary*.—“Simancas—Secular; Audiencia de Filipinas; cartas y expedientes de personas seculares vistos en el Consejo; anos de 1628 a 16[34?]; est. 67, caj. 6, leg. 40.”
 8. *Royal decrees*, 1626.—(a) The first of these is in “Audiencia de Filipinas; registro de oficio, reales ordenes dirigidas a las autoridades del distrito de la Audiencia; anos 1597 a 1634; est. 105, caj. 2, leg. 1.” (b) The other two are taken from the Archivo Historico Nacional, as noted below.
 9. *Importance of Philippines*.—The same title as No. 7, but “anos de 1565 a 1594; est. 67, caj. 6, leg. 34.” (Evidently misplaced.)
 10. *Decrees regarding religious*.—(a) The same as No. 8 (a). (b) Also in the Sevilla archives; but we have followed Pastells’s text in his edition of Colin (t. iii, pp. 760, 761). (c) The same as No. 1.
 11. *Inadvisability of occupying Formosa*.—Simancas—Secular; Audiencia de Filipinas; cartas y expedientes del presidente y oidores de dicha Audiencia vistos en el Consejo; anos 1607 a 1626; est. 67, caj. 6, leg. 20.”
 12. *Report of appointments*.—The same as No. 3.
 13. *Letters from Tavora*, 1628.—The same as No. 3.
 14. *Reasons for suppressing silk trade*.—The same as No. 7.
- The following documents are obtained from the “Cedulario Indico” of the Archivo Historico Nacional, Madrid:
- 8 (see No. 8, *ante*).—(b) “Tomo 39, fol. 185,” and “Tomo 32, fol. 16,” respectively.
 15. *Letter from king to Tavora*.—“Tomo 40, fol. 56 verso, no. 69.”
 16. *Decrees regarding Chinese*, 1627.—“Tomo 39, fol. 87, and fol. 186 verso,” respectively.



17. *Decrees regarding Chinese*, 1628-29.—“Tomo 39, fol. 188 verso, fol. 189 verso, and 190 verso,” respectively.

The following document is obtained from MSS. in the collection “Papeles de las Jesuitas,” in the Real Academia de la Historia, Madrid:

18. *Relations of 1628-29*—“Tomo 169, no. 3,” and “Tomo 84, no. 13.”

The following document is taken from a MS. in the British Museum:

19. *Military affairs of the islands*.—In a collection of papers entitled “Tratados Historicos, 1594-1639;” pressmark, “(693. h. 17) / 65.”

The following document is taken from Pastells’s edition of Colin’s *Labor evangelica*:

20. *Royal decree aiding Jesuits*, 1625.—In vol. iii, pp. 754, 755, (See also No. 10, *ante*.)

The following documents are taken from the Ventura del Arco MSS. (Ayer library):



Page 155

21. *Relation of 1626*.—In vol i, pp. 523-545.

22. *Relation of 1627-28*.—In vol. i, pp. 551-615.

The following document is taken from *Recopilacion de leyes de las Indias*.

23. *Laws regarding the Sangleys*.—In lib. vi, tit. xviii.

The following document is found in a pamphlet entitled *Toros y canas* (Barcelona, 1903), in which is printed a hitherto unpublished original MS. in possession of the Compañia General de Tabacos de Filipinas.

24. *Royal festivities at Manila*—pp. 9-25.

NOTES

[1] Our transcript reads “reals,” but both in this and in other instances in the present document, this is evidently an error of transcription for “ducados.” It would be very easy for the error to arise from the extremely bad handwriting of many Spanish documents, in which the Spanish abbreviations for the two above terms might bear a close similarity. “Ducados” is used later in the document, when speaking of similar instances.

[2] These expeditions against the Mediterranean Moors were undertaken because of their continual depredations on Spanish commerce and near Spanish coasts. In 1602 Spain and Persia united against Turkey, and in 1603 the marquis of Santa Cruz, with the Neapolitan galleys, attacked, and plundered Crete and other Turkish islands. Many operations were conducted against the Moorish states of north Africa, but no effective check was applied to their piratical expeditions. See Hume’s *Spain*, p. 210.

[3] Spain has never recovered from the expulsion of the thrifty Moriscos, who were the descendants of the old Moors. The edict of expulsion against the Valencian Moriscos was issued on September 22, 1609, by the viceroy Caracena. Its political excuse was negotiations between the Moriscos and English to effect a rising against Felipe III. “With the exception of six of the ‘oldest and most Christian’ Moriscos in each village of a hundred souls, who were to remain and teach their successors their modes of cultivation, every man and woman of them were to be shipped within three days for Barbary on pain of death, carrying with them only such portable property as they themselves could bear.” In six months one hundred and fifty thousand Moriscos were driven from Spain. In the winter of 1609-10 the Moriscos were also expelled from Aragon, Murcia, Andalucia, and Cataluna, and other places. See Hume’s *Spain*, pp. 210-213.



[4] Referring to the claim of Isabella, eldest daughter of Felipe II, to the province of Bretagne (or Brittany), in France, as an inheritance in right of her mother, since the Salic law was inoperative in that province.

[5] Francisco Crespo, S.J., was born at Ubeda, and entered the Jesuit order in 1598, at the age of fifteen. He preached for ten years and resided for some years at the court of Spain, in the capacity of procurator of the missions of the Indias. He died at Madrid, September 25, 1665. He was the author of two relations and the memorial mentioned in the decree. See Sommervogel's *Bibliothèque Comp. de Jesus*.



Page 156

[6] This was Rodrigo Pacheco y Osorio, marques de Cerralvo, the successor of Gelves (*Vol. XX*, p. 127). He reached Mexico in October, 1624, vindicated his predecessor in the public estimation, and quieted the disturbances in the country. He fortified Vera Cruz and Acapulco, to protect them against the Dutch, whose ships cruised in both oceans. Cerralvo was an energetic and able ruler, who did much for the welfare of his people. He held the viceroyalty until September, 1635, when he returned to Spain, and was given a place in the Council of the Indias.

[7] These festivities celebrated the accession to the throne of Felipe IV. Although they occurred in 1623, this account is placed here because written August 1, 1625.

[8] A reference to the celebrated university of Salamanca, and used synonymously with learning or skill.

[9] *El Gran Capitan*: an epithet applied to Gonsalvo de Cordova, commander-in-chief of the Spanish forces under Ferdinand of Castile, in recognition of his services in 1495-96 against the French armies in Calabria, Italy—defeating them there and elsewhere, and compelling them to withdraw from Italy. A treaty of peace between France and Spain was the result; it was signed at Marcoussis in August, 1498. The Neapolitan kingdom was divided between France and Spain in November, 1500; but quarrels soon arose between them, and their armies fought for its possession. Under the leadership of Cordova, Naples was conquered for Spain (1502-04). Cordova was born in 1453, and died in December, 1515.

[10] Evidently an allusion to the procession made at Manila, on certain occasions, in which the banner of the city was carried before the cabildo—to which allusions have been already made in various documents of this series.

[11] A kind of lance or spear, used by bull-fighters.

[12] The game of canas was an equestrian sport engaged in by the nobility on the occasion of any special celebration. They formed various figures, which engaged in various contests. One side charged against the other, hurling their spears, from which their opponents guarded themselves with their shields.

[13] In olden times, empirical healers or physicians cured with this stone the pain or sickness called colic—*hijada*, as it was then written, now *ijada*.—*Rev. Eduardo Navarro*, O.S.A.

Piedra de mal de hijada: from the description, apparently made of some brilliant crystalline substance.

[14] In the Jesuit relation of 1619-20 (see *Vol. XIX*, p. 61), mention is made of a bull-fight in terms that would indicate that they had already become established in the



islands. This fight of 1619 is evidently the one to which W. E. Retana refers in his *Fiestas de toros en Filipinas* (Madrid, 1896). Huerta (*Estado*, p. 17), incorrectly states that the first bull-fight in the islands was on February 4, 1630. But Chirino mentions these spectacles (*Vol. XII* of this series, p. 182) as customary in both Manila and Cebu at least as early as 1602, which was the year in which he left the islands.



Page 157

[15] A letter from the king to Governor Tavora, dated November 21, 1625, refers to the latter the question of further attempts to work the Igorrote gold-mines. Reference is made therein to the report of Alonso Martin Quirante on these mines; and the cost of his expedition thither is stated as forty thousand pesos.

[16] Ley xxix, lib. viii, tit. xxi, of *Recopilacion de leyes*, relating to the sale of offices in the Philippines, is as follows:

“We order that all offices be sold in the Filipinas Islands, which are regulated and ordained in accordance with the laws of this titulo, as in the other parts of the Indias, observing the laws in regard to sales, and the condition of securing a confirmation—provided that, if any persons shall hold any of those offices comprehended in those islands, as a concession which shall have been made to them for life by us, or by the governors of those islands in our name, these must be sold, and shall be sold, as if they were rendered vacant by the death [of the incumbents]. They cannot resign them, for it is our will that they shall not enjoy that privilege, as they could have done had they bought those offices.” [Felipe III, Madrid, November 29, 1616; December 19, 1618.]

[17] The same instruction is given after nearly all the following statistics, namely “idem,” *i.e.*, that they be entered in the book. Consequently, we omit all following instances.

[18] This Dutch fort was on the southwestern coast of the island of Formosa. See Valentyn’s descriptive and historical account (with map) of Tayouan (or Formosa), in his *Oud en Nieuw Oost-Indien*, at end of part iv. Boulger says (*China*, p. 132): The Dutch “had acquired their place in Formosa by the retirement of the Japanese from Taiwan in 1624, when the Dutch, driven away by the Portuguese from Macao, sought a fresh site for their proposed settlement in the Pescadore group, and eventually established themselves at Fort Zealand.”

[19] Interesting accounts of Formosa and its inhabitants are given by George Candidius (a Dutch Protestant minister who began a mission among the natives in 1626), in Churchill’s collection of *Voyages* (London, 1704), i, pp. 526-533; and J.B. Steere, who traveled through the western part of the island, in *Journal of American Geographical Society*, 1874, pp. 303-334. The latter states that the chief city of Formosa, Taiwanfu, is built on the site of the old Dutch colony near Fort Zelandia; and furnishes several vocabularies of native languages.

[20] La Concepcion describes the Spanish expedition to Formosa (*Historia de Philipinas*, v, pp. 114-122) and the labors of Dominican missionaries there; he says that the Spanish fort was erected on an islet which they named San Salvador, near which was an excellent harbor called Santissima Trinidad. Apparently these localities were on the northeastern coast of the island.



Page 158

[21] This officer was a relative of Governor Juan de Silva. A full account of this unfortunate expedition and his death in Siam is given in the "Relation of 1626," *post*.

[22] This order of nuns, commonly known as "Poor Clares," is the second order of St. Francis. It was founded by St. Clare, who was born at Assisi, the birthplace of St. Francis, and she was received by him into the monastic life in 1212; she died in 1253. The order soon spread into France and Spain; and a written rule was given to these nuns by St. Francis in 1224, which was approved by the pope in 1246. Some modifications of this rule—which was exceedingly austere—crept into various convents; and a rule, approved by Urban IV, was drawn up in 1264, similar to that of St. Francis, but somewhat mitigated. It was adopted by most of the convents in the order, this branch being known as Urbanists; the minority, who followed the stricter rule, were called Clarisses. The government and direction of the order were at first divided between a cardinal protector and the superiors of the Franciscans; but, early in the sixteenth century, Julius II placed the Poor Clares entirely under the jurisdiction of the general and provincials of the Friars Minors. (Addis and Arnold's *Catholic Dictionary*.)

[23] Geronima de la Asuncion, daughter of Pedro Garcia Yanez, was born in Toledo in 1555, and entered the Order of St. Clare in August, 1570. With seven nuns of her order, she embarked from Cadiz on July 5, 1620, and arrived at Manila August 5, 1621, where she founded the convent of La Concepcion. Within two months, she received twenty girls into the novitiate, notwithstanding the rigorous and austere rules of this order. The provincial of the Franciscans strove to modify this strictness, for the sake of the nuns' health in so trying a climate, but Mother Geronima refused to yield, and finally triumphed, in the appeal made to the head of the order—although after this victory she permitted some relaxations of the rule. Opposition arose to the seclusion of so many young women of Manila in the monastic life; and even the diocesan authorities endeavored to restrain their zeal—even excommunicating Mother Geronima for a time—but with little result. She died on October 22, 1630. See La Concepcion's account of her and the entrance of this order, in *Hist. de Philipinas*, v, pp. 1-17.

[24] This man undertook, as a work of charity, to rear and educate orphaned or poor Spanish boys, for which purpose he collected alms; and later he secured from the crown the aid for which these letters ask. Having spent his life in this work, Guerrero at his death (being then a Dominican friar) placed this school in charge of the Dominicans, who accepted it—on June 18, 1640, organizing it as the college of San Juan de Letran; it became a department of their university of Santo Tomas.

[25] Evidently referring to the city of Cebu, of which Christoval de Lugo was then alcalde-mayor; this officer conducted an expedition against the Joloans in 1627, in which the Spaniards inflicted heavy losses on these pirates.



Page 159

[26] Apparently meaning that he came with Governor Fajardo in 1618; for the present narrative must have been written as early as 1624.

[27] That is, “the spirit of the Lord came rushing.”

[28] The only Jeronimo Rodrigues, and who was probably the one in our text, mentioned by Sommervogel was the Portuguese born at Villa de Monforte. He went to the Indias in 1566, and became visitor of the provinces of China and Japan. He died while rector of Macan. He left several letters and treatises, some of which have been printed. See Sommervogel's *Bibliothèque*.

[29] The old capital of Siam was Ayuthia (also written, in early documents, Yuthia and Odia). It was founded in the year 1350, and was built on an island in the river Meinam—the proper name of which, according to M.L. Cort's *Siam* (New York, 1886), p. 20, is Chow Payah, the name Meinam (meaning “mother of waters”) being applied to many rivers—seventy-eight miles from the sea. Ayuthia was captured and ruined by the Burmese in 1766, and later the capital was removed to Bangkok (founded in 1769), which lies on the same river, twenty-four miles from the sea. Crawford, writing in the middle of the nineteenth century, gives the estimated population of Ayuthia at 40,000, and that of Bangkok at 404,000—the latter probably much too large. See his *Dict. Indian Islands*, article, “Siam.”

[30] Pedro de Morejon was born in 1562, at Medina del Campo. He entered his novitiate in 1577, and set out for the Indias in 1586, and spent more than fifty years in the missions of the Indias and Japan. His associates were Jacques Chisai and Juan de Goto, who were martyred. In 1620 he was sent to Rome as procurator of Japan, became rector of the college of Meaco in 1633, and died shortly after. San Antonio (*Chronicas*, iii, pp. 534, 535) gives a letter written by him to the Franciscan religious martyred in Japan in 1596 while on the road to execution; and he was the author of several relations concerning Christianity in Japan. See Sommervogel's *Bibliothèque*.

[31] Antonio Francisco Cardim was born at Viana d'Alentejo, near Evora, in 1596, and entered his novitiate February 24, 1611. He went to the Indias in 1618, where he visited Japan, China, the kingdom of Siam, Cochinchina, and Tonquin. He died at Macao, April 30, 1659. He left a number of writings concerning his order and their work in the Orient. See Sommervogel's *Bibliothèque*.

[32] The name Manados (now Menado) was applied to a province (now called Minahasa) in the northernmost peninsula of Celebes; see Colin's description of it in his *Labor evangelica* (ed. 1663), pp. 109, 110. Jesuit missions were early established there (Colin, *ut supra*, p. 820), from the island of Siao.

[33] There is apparently some defect in the text at this place, as if the royal comment or decision on Tavora's request had been omitted.



Page 160

[34] This officer had been appointed to the post of warden, without any salary, by Fernando de Silva (see the latter's report of July 30, 1626); but Tavora soon replaced him by another.

[35] This law, dated Ventosilla, April 15, is as follows: "Notwithstanding the claims of the alcaldes-in-ordinary of Manila, as to trying jointly the suits and causes of the Parian, on the ground that it is within the five leguas of their jurisdiction, it is our will that the governor of the Parian alone try in the first instance its suits and causes, with appeals to the Audiencia; while in respect to the government of the Parian, ley iv, titulo xv, libro ii, shall be observed."

This latter law, dated November 4, 1606, is as follows: "Inasmuch as the auditors of the royal Audiencia of Manila, under pretext of a decree from us dated December eighteen, one thousand six hundred and three, meddle in affairs touching the Parian or the Sangley Chinese, and in giving orders and licenses so that they may reside in the Filipinas Islands; and inasmuch as the cognizance and ruling in these matters should concern our governor and captain-general, in whom the defense of that land is vested: therefore we order that matters concerning the Parian of the Sangleys be alone in the charge and care of our governors and captains-general, and that our royal Audiencia abstain from discussing or taking cognizance of anything touching this matter, unless it be that the governor and captain-general commit something that concerns him to them. And in order that the advisable good relations should be held among all of them, and the Parian be governed with more unanimity and satisfaction, the governors and captains-general shall be very careful always to communicate to the royal Audiencia what shall be deemed advisable for them [to know]."

Law v of the book and titulo, from which the above laws of the regular text are taken, and which was promulgated by Carlos II and the queen mother, provides that "in the government of the Parian, and the jurisdiction, communication, and all the other things contained in ley iv, titulo xy, libro ii, what was enacted shall be observed."

[36] See this law, *ante*, note 34.

[37] This same law, with slightly different wording, is found in libro viii, titulo xxix, ley xi, under the same date as the first one above. The only material difference is in the additional words at the end: "concealment of any quantity; and very exact account shall be taken of everything, and the balances struck."

[38] This is but one clause in the royal decree of November 19, 1627 (which see, *post*); and it would seem that the date here given, June 14, must be an error for that just cited. This and the following matter from the *Recopilacion* show clearly the slipshod manner in which that work was compiled.

[39] See this decree in full, pp. 164-166, *post*; it contains important matter which is here omitted.



Page 161

[40] Referring to William Adams, an Englishman who landed in Japan in April, 1600, and soon became a favorite with the ruler Iyeyasu. He was in the employ of the East India Company from November, 1613, to December, 1616; and at other times rendered various services to Iyeyasu, traded on his own account, or acted as interpreter to the English and the Dutch in Japan. He remained in that country until his death, May 16, 1620. See Cocks's *Diary* (Hakluyt Society's publications), i, pp. iii-xxxiv.

[41] *i.e.*, the Chinese, not understanding scientific navigation, are not able to direct their course across the sea to points on the Philippine coast where they could be safe and escape the Dutch who were lying in wait for them; but they cross from island to island, by devious routes, making their way as their partial knowledge of sailing enables them, and thus cannot avoid die enemy.

[42] La Concepcion states (*Hist. de Philipinas*, v, p. 131) that Tavora desired, through martial ardor, to undertake some important expedition (for which he had made all possible preparations during the winter and spring); and that in a council of war three such were proposed—"to dislodge the Dutch from the port of Taiban [*i.e.*, Taiwan, in Formosa]; to Maluco, from [the fort of] Malayo, to punish their insolent acts; or to obtain satisfaction from Siam for the death of Don Fernando de Silva"—of which the first was chosen. But, through various delays, Tavora's voyage was begun too late, and defeated by the stormy weather that ensued.

[43] The following note is a part of the original document:

"*Note.* While writing this relation, these forty Spaniards arrived in a ship, less four sailors who wished to remain in the kingdom of Camboja, whither went all those who remained in the lanchas after the galleons left them. That king of Camboja protected them; and, although he suspected that they were spies, they were welcomed cordially and sent to Manila, where they arrived July first."

[44] This cruise by the Spanish galleons is of much the same piratical character which the Spaniards themselves ascribed to the Dutch and English adventurers of that time; nor did they hesitate to attack peaceful trading ships, even those of nations against whom they had no grievance.

[45] In 1627 the emperor Tienki (a grandson of Wanleh) died, and was succeeded by his younger brother, Tsongching, who was the last of the actual Ming rulers. In the latter part of his reign he was almost constantly at war with the Manchus, who were ruled by Taitson, fourth son of Noorhachu. In 1640 a revolt occurred in China, headed by Li Tseching, who four years later captured Peking. Tsongching, seeing that his cause was lost, committed suicide. Taitson, who had died in 1643, was succeeded by his son Chuntche; the latter, after the fall of the rebel Li Tseching, became the first emperor of the Manchu dynasty in China, and established his capital in Peking.



Page 162

[46] This noted relic was dug up in the Chinese city of Singanfu, in 1625. It is a stone slab, containing various inscriptions in Chinese and Syriac; it was erected in the year 781, and is a monument of the early existence of the Nestorian church in China. See Yule's account of it in his *Cathay*, i, pp. xci-xcvi, clxxxi-clxxxiii.

[47] Evidently referring to the Manchu chief Noorhachu, who from 1591 had harassed the northern frontiers of China; he died at Mukden in September, 1626.

[48] Nicholas Longobardi was born in 1566 at Caltagarone, Sicily, and admitted into the Society in 1580 (Sotwell says that he entered his novitiate in 1582, at the age of seventeen). He became a teacher in humanities and rhetoric. In 1596 he went to China, and settled in the province of Kiang-si, where he was appointed general superior of the mission from 1610 to 1622. He died at Peking, December 11, 1655, according to Sotwell. Father de Machault says that he died September 1, 1654, according to a letter written May 7, 1655, by Father Francois Clement; but the inscription on his tomb gives the first date. He had written a number of treatises, some of them apparently in the Chinese language. See Sommervogel's *Bibliothèque*.

[49] The Dominican provincial at this time was Bartolome Martinez, who made his profession in 1602, and arrived in the Philippines in 1611. In the following year he made an unsuccessful attempt to found a mission at Macao; but on his return to Manila was assigned to the Chinese village of Binondo, where he became proficient in their language, and afterward was vicar of the Parian at Manila. In 1618 he was shipwrecked on the coast of Formosa, which he considered to be a gateway to the Chinese empire. In 1626 he founded a mission there, and when his provincialate was ended he returned to Formosa, where he died by accidental drowning, August 1, 1629. See sketch of his life in *Resena biog. Sant. Rosario*, i, pp. 335-337.

[50] Cf. the account by Paul Clain (Manila, June 10, 1697) of a similar occurrence, natives of the Caroline Islands being blown by storms to the coast of Samar. See *Lettres edificantes*, i (Paris, 1717), pp. 112-136.

[51] "In 1610, the Dutch had built [in Java] a fort, which they named Batavia. This was besieged by the Sunda princes of Bantam and Jacatra in 1619, and it was on their defeat in that year that it was resolved to build a town on the ruins of the native one of Jacatra, and this took the name of the fort. Batavia has been the capital of all the Dutch possessions in India since its foundation in 1619." (Crawford's *Dict. Indian Islands*, p. 44.)

[52] A native town in the northern part of Gilolo (or Almahera) Island; it was captured by Juan de Silva.



Page 163

[53] Probably referring to the plant called “China grass” (*Boehmeria nivea*), a shrub indigenous in India, and probably in China and other countries of eastern Asia; also introduced by cultivation into Europe and America. The Chinese name for it is *tchou-ma*. The well known “ramie” is but a variety (*tenacissima*) of *Boehmeria nivea*. The fiber of China grass is considered as a textile substance of the first rank. For description of this plant and its culture and use, see C.R. Dodge’s *Useful Fiber Plants of the World* (U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, 1897), pp. 85-91.

[54] This was the revolt of the Moors in Granada in the reign of Felipe II, which occurred in 1568-71, under the leadership of Aben Humeya. It was due to an edict restricting the liberties of the Moors, and depriving them of the exercise of most of their distinctive customs. It was quelled under the leadership of the famous Don Juan, and the Moors were expelled from their homes to other parts of Spain.

[55] This document, like so many existing in Spanish archives, was printed, evidently for the greater convenience of the members of the Council. The signature is in writing, as also the above two endorsements, which are in different hands.

[56] Fabricio Serzale was born at Naples, April 2, 1568. He was admitted into the Society, December 10, 1586, became a teacher of grammar, and went to the Philippines in June, 1600. He was superior of Carigara; and his death occurred at Manila June 30, 1644. See Sommervogel’s *Bibliothèque*.

[57] This paragraph is written in the margin of the original document that we follow. The church here mentioned was that of the Dominicans.

[58] Father Fernando de Estrada, a native of Ecija, died at Manila in the year 1646, at the age of forty-five. He was a missionary in Naujan of Mindoro, in Ternate, and among the Bisayans and Tagals. (Murillo Velarde’s *Hist. de Philipinas*, fol. 194.)

[59] This was Juan de Bueras, born in 1588; he arrived at Manila in 1622, and for four years was rector of the college there. He was provincial from 1626 until 1636; and in 1644 he went to Mexico as visitor of that province. See sketch of his life in Murillo Velarde’s *Hist. de Philipinas*, fol. 71, verso.

[60] Juan Lopez was born at Moratalla, in the diocese of Murcia, December 27, 1584. Admitted into the Society October 11, 1600, he went six years later to the Philippines, where he was rector of Carigara, Manila, and Cavite, associate of the provincial, commissary of the Inquisition, and missionary among the Indians; he also went to Rome as procurator of his province. He died at Manila, September 3, 1659. A probable error in name makes Francisco Lopez rector of Cavite in 1637, for Juan was rector of the residence there at that time. See Sommervogel’s *Bibliothèque*; and Murillo Velarde’s *Hist. de Philipinas*, fol. 269, verso.



Page 164

[61] Geronimo Perez de Nueros was born at Zaragoza, in 1595. He entered the Society in 1616 and became a teacher of philosophy, and also taught theology for nine years. He went to the Philippines, whence he went later to Mexico. He died at Puebla, September 27, 1675. He wrote a number of relations, one on the life and martyrdom of Father Marcelo Francisco Mastrilo; while a piece of his composition was acted in the church of the college of Manila, July 5, 1637. See Sommervogel's *Bibliothèque*.

[62] In the margin occurs the following at this point: "It is called *nonog* in the language of Manila." Blanco (*Flora*, p. 106), after enumerating a number of native names given to this tree, says that it is called *nono* at Otaiti in the South Sea. The chief uses of the *nino* (*Morinda ligulata*, *Morinda de cintillas*—Blanco; *Morinda citrifolia*—Linn.; *Morinda tinctoria*—Roxb.) are the making of red ink and dye, while the leaves, were used in making plasters for the relief of pain. The tree attains a height of ten or twelve feet, and has wide-spreading branches, and the leaves are eight or more inches in length. See Blanco *ut supra*, pp. 105-109; and Delgado's *Historia*, p. 449.

[63] Pastells publishes in his edition of Colin's *Labor evangelica* (iii, p. 755) the following letter from the Manila Audiencia:

"Sire:

The fathers of the Society of Jesus of this city have been suffering signal discomfort and need, because of the falling of their church, and because the house in which they live is threatened with the same ruin, as it is dilapidated in many places; and, as it is propped up in many places, the religious are living in great danger. This city has grieved much over this loss, as the Society is so frequented by all its inhabitants and is of so great benefit as it is in all the world. Although they have commenced to build their new church, and a dwelling-house, they will not be able to finish these very soon, because of lack of funds; and their present need demands a more speedy relief. Consequently, this Audiencia is obliged to represent the case to your Majesty, so that, with your accustomed liberality, you may be pleased to give an alms to the fathers for these works. Since they were commenced with what your Majesty was pleased to give them five years ago, it will be right that they be finished with another equivalent sum. The fathers deserve this aid, as they were the first to engage in the matters of the royal service in the building of galleons with the Indians of their districts; while, in the fleets which are offered to them, they embark personally. And, in this respect, they are very attentive in all other things that concern your Majesty's service and the public welfare. With the protection which they promise themselves from the piety of your Majesty, they will continue successfully in this care. May our Lord preserve your Majesty many years, as is necessary to Christendom. Manila, July twenty-nine, one thousand six hundred and thirty.



Page 165

Don Juan Nino de Tavora
Licentiate Geronimo de Legaspi
Licentiate Don Mathias Flores
Licentiate Marcos Zapata de Galvez"

[64] La Concepcion relates this occurrence (*Hist. de Philipinas*, v, pp. 139-145), and its effect on the archbishop, Serrano; he was so horrified and grieved that he fell into a profound melancholy, which ended his life on June 14, 1629. The disposal of the stolen articles was finally made known in the confessional by one of the accomplices in the theft.

[65] The Portuguese commander Albuquerque had in 1508 seized the more important ports on the eastern coast of 'Oman, which were then tributary to the ruler of Hormuz—a petty principality on the southern coast of Persia, afterward removed (about 1300 A.D.) to the island now called Hormuz (or Ormuz). The Portuguese exacted tribute from these towns, and from the ruler of Hormuz; and later coeperated with him in enforcing his authority over his tributaries, and defending him from foreign foes. They were expelled from 'Oman by its imam, Nasir-bin-Murshid (who reigned from 1624 to 1649)—except from Maskat and el-Matrah, which was accomplished by his successor, Sultan-bin-Seif, by 1652. See George P. Badger's *Imams and Seyyids of 'Oman* (Hakluyt Society's publications, London, 1871), pp. xxii, 4, 46, 66-69, 74, 78-90.

[66] *i.e.*, "We have passed through fire and water, and thou hast brought us out into a refreshment." (Psalm lxxv, v. 12, Douay Bible; lxxvi in Protestant versions.)

[67] Many of these exiles went to Formosa and other neighboring islands.

[68] Thus in original (*la mucha Plata qe tomaron a los dichos Religiosos, q_e_ dicen serian dos mil sacos de hazienda*); but one would hardly expert that so large an amount of silver could have been borrowed, as the context would indicate, from the merchants of Manila (apparently for an investment in Japanese goods, from the proceeds of which the friars in charge of it might aid their persecuted brethren in Japan) for conveyance by two friars on so dangerous and uncertain a voyage—doubly so, since the Japanese authorities had strictly forbidden all trade between their ports and Manila.

[69] *i.e.*, on the bar at the mouth of the river of Siam (the Chow Payah, commonly called Meinam). For account of the capture of the Japanese vessel, see "Relation of 1627-28," *ante*.

In a letter of August 4, 1630, the governor says, regarding the question that arose on account of the capture of the Japanese junk: "For the preservation of the commerce of the Japanese with Macan, which is interrupted by the capture of one of their junks by our galleons in the port of Sian in May of 628, the investigations which I have written

during the last two years have been made by my efforts. The Japanese have become somewhat more softened, because they have understood that it was not the intention

Page 166

of this government to damage them. What I wrote last year to the king of Japon was of considerable aid in that understanding, and that king made it known in Japon. The city of Macan lately begged me to write new letters to Japon, and I have done it very willingly, with the advice of the Audiencia and other experienced persons. Our Lord grant that it will have a good result." See Pastells's *Colin*, i, p. 242. The original of this letter rests in the Sevilla archives; its pressmark, "est. 67, caj. 6, leg. 8."